

Habitat Conservation Plan

for the Properties of

The Pacific Lumber Company,  
Scotia Pacific Holding Company,  
and Salmon Creek Corporation

February 1999

## ERRATA TO THE HCP

Insert this paragraph as the new **first** paragraph on page P-69, Subsection 6.3.6, Adaptive Management.

The purpose of adaptive management is to provide a mechanism to ensure that HCP prescriptions are implemented in a manner that reflects sound science, taking into account new data and analysis. Adaptive management also provides flexibility by allowing alternative approaches for achieving biological goals under certain circumstances, in order that the HCP can be implemented in a manner that is sensitive to both economic concerns and biological necessities.

Insert this sentence at the end of the first **full** paragraph on page P-70:

The Wildlife Agencies shall disapprove **PALCO's** proposed changes if they are in conflict with AB 1986 or if the Wildlife Agencies find, in writing, that **PALCO's** proposed changes will impair the ability of the plan to achieve, over time, or maintain properly functioning aquatic habitat conditions.

February 1999

**Dear** Reader:

This copy of the “Habitat Conservation Plan for the Properties of The Pacific Lumber Company, Scotia Pacific Holding Company, and Salmon Creek Corporation,” dated February 1999, incorporates editorial changes to the Habitat Conservation Plan attached as Appendix P of the “Final Environmental Impact ~~Statement/Environmental~~ Impact Report and Habitat Conservation Plan/Sustained Yield Plan for the Headwaters Forest Project,” dated **January** 1999. These editorial changes did not change the meaning of the January Habitat Conservation Plan. Rather, the changes were made to **clarify** language.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.	ORGANIZATION .....	1.
2.	PLANNING CONTEXT .....	3
	2.1 HCP CONSIDERATIONS .....	3
	2.2 <b>HEADWATERS</b> AGREEMENT .....	4
	2.3 AGREEMENT IN PRINCIPLE .....	5
3.	SCOPE OF THE PLAN .....	6
	3.1 PLAN AND PERMIT AREA .....	6
	3.2 PLAN AND PERMIT PERIOD .....	6
	3.3 COVERED SPECIES .....	6
	3.4 COVERED ACTIVITIES .....	6
	3.4.1 Timber Management.. .....	6
	3.4.2 Roads and Landings.. .....	10
	3.4.3 Commercial Rook Quarries .....	10
4.	BASELINE CONDITIONS .....	12
5.	ALTERNATIVES CONSIDERED .....	16
	5.1 TAKE AVOIDANCE .....	16
	5.2 SELECTIVE HARVEST .....	16
	5.3 EXPANDED HEADWATERS RESERVE.. .....	17
	5.4 INCREASED MIDTERM PRODUCTION .....	17
6.	OPERATING CONSERVATION PROGRAMS .....	18
	6.1 MARBLED MURRELET CONSERVATION PLAN.. .....	18
	6.1 .1 Management Objective .....	18
	6.1.2 Conservation Measures .....	18
	6.1.3 Monitoring.. .....	27
	6.2 NORTHERN SPOTTED OWL CONSERVATION PLAN.. .....	31
	6.2.1 Management Objectives.. .....	32
	6.2.2 Conservation Measures .....	32
	6.2.3 Adaptive Management.. .....	35
	6.3 AQUATICS CONSERVATION PLAN.. .....	36
	6.3.1 Management Objective .....	36
	6.3.2 Watershed Analysis.. .....	37
	6.3.3 Control of Sediment from Roads and Other Sources.. .....	40
	6.3.4 Aquatic Habitat Conservation.. .....	49
	6.3.5 Aquatic Monitoring.. .....	59
	6.3.6 Adaptive Management.. .....	69
	6.4 BALD EAGLE CONSERVATION PLAN.. .....	70
	6.4.1 Management Objectives.. .....	70

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

6.4.2 Conservation Measures .....	70
6.4.3 Monitoring .....	72
6.5 PEREGRINE FALCON CONSERVATION PLAN .....	72
6.5.1 Management Objectives.. .....	72
6.5.2 Conservation Measures .....	72
6.5.3 Monitoring .....	73
6.6 WESTERN SNOWY PLOVER CONSERVATION PLAN.....	73
6.6.1 Conservation Measures .....	73
6.7 BANK SWALLOW CONSERVATION PLAN.....	73
6.7.1 Management Objectives.. .....	73
6.7.2 Conservation Measures .....	74
6.7.3 Monitoring .....	74
6.8 PACIFIC FISHER CONSERVATION PLAN.....	74
6.8.1 Management Objectives.....	74
6.8.2 Conservation Measures .....	74
6.8.3 Implementation/Compliance Monitoring.....	75
6.8.4 Effectiveness Monitoring .....	75
6.9 RED TREE VOLE CONSERVATION PLAN .....	75
6.9.1 Management Objective .....	75
6.9.2 Conservation Measures .....	75
6.9.3 Implementation/Compliance Monitoring.....	76
6.9.4 Effectiveness Monitoring and Adaptive Management .....	76
6.10 AMPHIBIAN AND REPTILE CONSERVATION PLAN .....	76
6.10.1 Management Objectives.. .....	76
6.10.2 Conservation Measures .....	76
6.10.3 Monitoring .....	77
6.11 MEASURES TO CONSERVE HABITAT DIVERSITY AND STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS.....	77
6.11.1 Management Objective .....	77
6.11.2 Conservation Measures .....	77
6.11.3 Monitoring .....	78
6.12 CONSERVATION PLAN FOR SENSITIVE PLANTS.. .....	79
6.12.1 Several Measures Necessary to Avoid Significant Impacts to Plants .....	79
6.13 THP CHECKLIST AND HCP MONITOR .....	81
6.14 STREAMBED ALTERATION AGREEMENT.....	81
7. IMPACTS OF THE HCP ON COVERED SPECIES .....	82
8. FUNDING .....	87..
9. OTHER REQUIREMENTS.....	89..

## FIGURES

<b>Figure 1.</b> PALCO Project Area Map .....	2
<b>Figure 2.</b> PALCO HCP Murrelet Conservation Areas as Expanded December 1998.....	19
<b>Figure 3.</b> Owl Creek Murrelet Conservation Area Expanded .....	19
<b>Figure 4.</b> Griuley Creek Complex Expanded .....	21
<b>Figure 5.</b> Projected Forest Seral Types for the Plan Area by Decade.....	82
<b>Figure 6.</b> Inventory, Growth, and Harvest per Decade.. ..	83

## TABLES

<b>Table 1.</b> Watershed Assessment Areas (acres).....	7
<b>Table 2.</b> Covered (List A) Species .....	8
<b>Table 3.</b> Baseline Conditions .....	13
<b>Table 4.</b> Distribution of List A Species in the Plan Area.....	14
<b>Table 6.</b> Wildlife Habitat Relationship ( <b>WHR</b> ) Habitat Type and Use by Northern Spotted Owls.....	33
<b>Table 7.</b> Management Thresholds for Northern Spotted Owl Activity Sites .....	33
<b>Table 6.</b> Projected Forest Seral Types in Class I <b>WLPZs</b> by Decade for the Plan Period (acres) . . .	36

## ATTACHMENTS

Attachment 1	Volume II, Part B - PALCO Ownership by Assessor Parcel Number
Attachment 2	Volume II, Part E - Assessment of Watershed Disturbances and Recovery
Attachment 3	Volume III, Part 0 - Assessment and Implementation Techniques for Road-Related Sediment Source Inventories and Stormproofing
Attachment 4	Changed and Unforeseen Circumstances
Attachment 5	Implementation Agreement with regard to The Pacific Lumber Company Habitat Conservation Plan

AI3 1986	California State Assembly Bill 1986
ACD	Angular canopy density
<b>ANOVA</b>	Analysis of variance
BFN	board feet net
°C	Degrees Celsius
c c c	California Conservation Corps
CCR	California Code of Regulations
CDF	California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection
CDFG	California Department of Fish and Game
CESA	California Endangered Species Act
CEQA	California Environmental Quality Act
<b>CFR</b>	Code of Federal Regulations
CHERT	County of Humboldt Extraction Review Team
<b>CWHR</b>	California Wildlife Habitat Relationships
cm	centimeter(s)
CMZ	channel migration zone
<b>CNPS</b>	California Native Plant Society
CPOM	coarse particulate organic matter
dbh	diameter at breast height
<b>DEIS/DEIR</b>	Draft environmental impact statement/draft environmental impact report
DI	disturbance index
DOM	dissolved organic matter
EEZ	equipment exclusion zone
ELZ	equipment limitation zone
EPA	(U.S.) Environmental Protection Agency
ERA	equivalent <b>roaded</b> area
ESA	Endangered Species Act (Federal)
ESU	ecologically significant unit
<b>FEIS</b>	Final environmental impact statement
FEMAT	Forest Ecosystem Management Assessment Team
FPOM	<b>fine</b> particulate organic matter
<b>FPRs</b>	(California) Forest Practice Rules
GIS	Geographic information system
GPS	Global positioning system
HCP	habitat conservation plan
<b>ITP</b>	incidental take permit
LEB	limited entry band
LMZ	limited management zone
LOP	(USACE) Letter of Permission
LTO	licensed timber operator
LTSY	long-term sustained yield
LWD	large woody debris
m	meter(s)
mbfn	thousand board feet net
mm	millimeter(s)

## ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS (CONTINUED)

MMCA	marbled mm-relet conservation area (also “ <b>MCA</b> ” in some reports)
MMRT	marbled murrelet recovery team
MWAT	maximum weekly average temperature
NCASI	National Council for Air and Stream Improvement
NCRWQCB	[California] North Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board
NDDB	National Diversity Data Base
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NMFS	National <i>Marine</i> Fisheries Service
NSO	northern spotted owl
NSOSRP	Northern Spotted Owl Scientific Review Panel
OCP	Operating Conservation Plan
POM	particulate organic matter
PSG	Pacific <b>Seabird</b> Group
PWA	Pacific Watershed Associates
<b>RHB</b>	restricted harvest band
<b>RMZ</b>	riparian management zone
RPF	registered professional forester
RWQCB	Regional Water Quality Control Board
SEB	selective entry zone
<b>SYP</b>	sustained yield plan
<b>THP</b>	timber harvest plan
<b>USACE</b>	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
<b>USFWS</b>	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
USGS	U.S. Geological Survey
WAA	watershed assessment area
<b>WDNR</b>	Washington Department of Natural Resources
<b>WLPZ</b>	watercourse and lake protection zone

Activity site- An activity site (or activity center) is the area including the primary roost tree of a non-nesting pair or single NSO, or the nest tree of a nesting pair. The most current NSO location shall be used to assess status.

Aggradation- Deposition in one place of material eroded **from** another. Aggradation raises the elevation of streambeds, floodplains, and the bottoms of other water bodies.

Anadromous fish- Fish that hatch and rear in freshwater, move to the ocean to grow and mature, and return to freshwater to reproduce. Salmon and steelhead are examples of anadromous fish.

**Bankfull** width- Channel width between the tops of the most pronounced banks on either side of a stream reach.

Boulders- Substrate particles greater than 256 mm in diameter. **Often** subclassified as small (256 to 1,024 mm) and large (greater than 1,024 mm) boulders.

Cable yarding- The system of transporting logs (typically used with ground-based equipment, e.g., tractor, rubber tire skidder, etc.) by means of cable (wire rope) to the yarding machine (yarder) or a landing while the yarder remains stationary.

Canopy closure- **The** proportion of an area covered by tree crowns.

Canopy cover- Vegetation projecting over waters, including crown cover (generally more than 1 m above the water surface) and overhead cover (less than 1 m above the water).

Channel- Natural or artificial waterway of perceptible extent that periodically or continuously contains moving water.

Channel migration zone (**CMZ**)— The boundary generally corresponds to the modern floodplain, but may also include river terraces that are subject to **significant** bank erosion. The area adjacent to watercourses constructed by the river in the present climate and inundated during periods of high flow. **The** floodplain is delineated by either the flood-prone area (**twice bankfull** depth) or the **100-year** floodplain, whichever is greater.

Class I Waters- Fish are always or seasonally present **onsite**. Class I waters include habitat to sustain fish migration, spawning, and rearing. They also include domestic water supplies, such as springs, **onsite** or within 100 feet downstream **from** the project operations area.

Class II Waters- Non-fish bearing waters. Aquatic habitat is present for non-fish aquatic species, including in watercourses, streams, seeps, springs, lakes, ponds, and wetlands.

Class III **Waters**— No aquatic life or habitat present. Class III waters show evidence of being capable of sediment transport to Class I and Class II waters under normal high water flow conditions before or after completion of timber operations.

Closed road- A proactive method of closing a road so that regular maintenance is no longer needed, and future erosion is largely prevented. The goal of road closure is to leave the road so that little or no maintenance **is** required for stability while the road **is unused**. Closed roads **usually** involve erosion-proofing techniques, including removing stream crossing **fills** and culverts, removing unstable road and landing fills, installing cross-road **drains** (e.g., rolling dips

## GLOSSARY (CONTINUED)

and water bars) for permanent road surface drainage, and other erosion prevention and erosion control measures as needed. **Proper** road closure is not accomplished by blocking a road and walking away from it to let 'nature reclaim the road.'

**Cobble**— Substrate particles 64 to 256 mm in diameter; often subclassified as small (64 to 128 mm) and large (128 to 256 mm) cobble.

Commercial thinning- The removal of trees in a young-growth stand to maintain or increase average stand diameter of the residual trees, promote timber growth, and improve forest health. The residual stand consists primarily of healthy vigorous dominant and codominant trees **from** the preharvest stand.

Conservation- The use of all methods and procedures which are necessary to bring any endangered or threatened species to the point at which the measures provided pursuant to the State and Federal Endangered Species Acts are no longer necessary.

Covered lands- The lands upon which the federal and state permits authorize incidental take of covered species and the lands to which the operating conservation program applies, including, upon their acquisition, the additional lands.

Critical habitat- Defined in the federal Endangered Species Act (1973) to include the area occupied by a species at the time it is listed, specific areas in the vicinity of the occupied habitat, and specific areas away from the occupied habitat considered essential for the conservation of the species.

Culvert- Buried pipe structure that allows streamflow or road drainage to pass under a road.

Cumulative impact- The incremental environmental impact of an action together with impacts of past, present, and reasonably foreseeable actions (regardless of the source of the other actions).

Decommissioned road- A method of removing those elements of a road that unnaturally reroute **hillslope** drainage or present slope stability hazards; to return a road prism back to its natural hillslope contours.

Degradation- Erosional removal of materials from one place to another within a watercourse. Degradation lowers the elevation of streambeds and floodplains.

Drainage area (watershed)- Total land area draining to any point in a stream, as measured on a map, aerial photo, or other horizontal, two-dimensional projection.

Equipment exclusion zone (**EEZ**)— The area where heavy equipment associated with timber operations is totally excluded for the protection of aquatic habitat, aquatic species, water quality, and beneficial uses of water and other forest resources.

Embeddedness- Degree to which large particles (boulders, rubble, gravel) are surrounded or covered by fine sediment; usually measured in classes according to percent coverage.

Emergency timber operations- Defined in the 1998 California Forest Practice **Rules**, Subchapter 7, Article 2, Section 1052, Subsections 1052.1, 1052.2, and 1052.3.

## GLOSSARY (CONTINUED)

Endangered species- Any plant or animal species in danger of extinction in all or a significant part of its range.

Endangered Species Act (**ESA**)— Federal Act of 1973, as amended, 16 USC Sections 1531 - 1543; California Act of 1984, as amended, Fish and Game Codes Sections 2050-2098.

Exemption harvest- Defined in the 1998 California Forest Practice Rules, Subchapter 7, Article 2, Section 1038.

Extinct- Species lacking a living representative; species which no longer **exists** in its original form.

**Fine** sediments- Sediment with particle sizes of 2 mm and less, including sand, silt, and clay.

Pry- **Life** stage of trout and salmon between full absorption of the yolk sac and a somewhat arbitrarily **defined** fingerling or parr stage (generally reached by the end of the first summer).

Gradient- Average change in vertical elevation per unit of horizontal distance.

Gravel- Substrate particles between 2 and 64 mm in diameter.

Habitat conservation plan (**HCP**)— A plan which describes expected impacts and the conservation measures designed to minimize and mitigate those impacts on fish and wildlife species; required as part of a Section **10(a)(1)(B)** incidental take permit application under the federal ESA and may be used as part of the Section **2081(b)** application under CESA.

Harass- A form of take under the federal **ESA**; defined in federal regulations as an intentional or negligent act or omission which creates the likelihood of injury to wildlife by annoying it to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavioral patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding, or sheltering (50 CFR 17.3).

Harm- A form of take under the federal **ESA**; defined in federal regulations as an act which actually kills or injures wildlife. Such acts may include significant habitat modification or degradation where it actually kills wildlife by significantly impairing essential behavioral patterns, including breeding, feeding, or sheltering (50 CFR 17.3).

**Headwall** swale- A concave depression, with convergent slopes typically of 65 percent or greater that is connected to waters via a continuous linear depression. A linear depression interrupted by a landslide deposit is considered continuous for this definition.

Hydrologic unit- Contains all areas that drain into a single basin. Larger than an individual planning watershed, but smaller than a watershed analysis area. Not to be confused with the state of California Regional Water Quality Control Board (**RWQCB**) **HUs**.

Improperly abandoned road- A road that is no longer in use and was walked away from to let **nature** reclaim it." The road has not been erosion-proofed and is not maintained, but access may be blocked by a gate, berm, or road failure.

Incidental take- The taking of a federally or state listed species, if such **taking** is incidental to, and not the purpose of, carrying out otherwise lawful activities.

## GLOSSARY (CONTINUED)

**Inner gorge**— That area of a watercourse bank situated immediately adjacent to the watercourse channel, having side slope of 65 percent or greater and extending from the edge of the channel **upslope** to the first break-in-slope (a break-in-slope is defined as a slope less than 65 percent for a distance of 100 feet or more) above the watercourse channel.

**Large woody debris (LWD)**— Any large piece of woody material that is deposited to the forest floor, the water, the streambeds, or the channel. Its smallest diameter is **generally** greater than 10 cm and its length is greater than 1 m.

**Mass wasting**- The downslope movements of earth caused by gravity (i.e., without major action of water, wind, or ice). It includes, but is not limited to, landslides, log dam breaks, rock falls, debris torrents, and creep. It does not, however, include surface erosion by running water. It may be caused by natural erosion processes, natural disturbances (e.g., earthquakes or fire events), or human disturbances (e.g., mining or road construction).

**Mass-wasting areas of concern**— A combination of all areas defined as inner gorges, **headwall** swales, unstable areas, and areas of high, very high, and extreme mass wasting hazard potential.

**Merchantable**- A tree that is 8 inches in diameter breast height (dbh).

**Mitigation**- Measures undertaken to diminish or compensate for the negative impacts of a project or activity on the environment, including (a) avoiding the impact altogether by not taking a certain action or parts of an action; (b) minimizing impacts by limiting the degree or magnitude of the action and its implementation; (c) rectifying the impact by repairing, rehabilitating, or restoring the **affected** environment; (d) reducing or eliminating the impact over time by preservation and maintenance operations during the life of the action; or (e) compensating for the impact by replacing or providing substitute resources or environments.

**Monitoring**- The process of collecting information to assess and document implementation and effectiveness of mitigation measures and to evaluate whether or not the objectives of the habitat conservation plan are being realized.

**Nesting pair**- Nesting pair status will be assigned if on two visits spaced at least one week apart before May 1, or one visit after May 1 a male and female are seen/heard within 0.25 mile of each other on the same visit and any of the following occurs: (a) a female is observed on a nest, (b) either a male or female is observed delivering prey to a nest, (c) a female is observed with a brood patch (mid-April to mid-June), or (d) young are detected with an adult.

**No-harvest band**- The **first** band of the Class I (0 to 100 feet), Class II, (0 to 30 feet), and Class III (0 to 30 feet) **RMZs** prior to watershed analysis. No timber harvest is allowed in this band, including sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, and emergency timber operations.

**Cuter band**- The second band (100 to 170 feet) of the RMZ on Class I waters. Under certain circumstances, selected harvest can occur in this band.

**Pair**- Pair status will be assigned if on two visits spaced at least one week apart before May 1, or one visit after May 1, a male and female are seen/heard within 0.25 mile of each other or (a) a male is observed taking a mouse to a female, (b) a female is observed on a nest, or (c) young are detected with an adult.

## GLOSSARY (CONTINUED)

**Parr**- Young salmonid, in the stage between **alevin** and smolt, that has developed distinctive dark "**parr** marks" on its sides and is actively feeding in fresh water.

**Pistol-butted**-A tree whose base exhibits a downslope curve followed by a return to a normal vertical trunk. This is considered an adjustment to slow downslope movement of the underlying soil.

**Planning watershed**- The contiguous land base and associated watershed system that forms a fourth order or other watershed, typically 10,000 acres or less in size. CDF has prepared and distributed maps identifying the planning watersheds.

**Pool**- Portion of a stream with reduced current velocity, **often** with deeper water than surrounding areas and with a smooth surface.

**Population**- A collection of individuals who share a common gene pool.

**Reconstructed road**- Those existing roads that are to be restored or improved to be **useable** for hauling forest products. A reconstructed road does not include routine or annual maintenance or rehabilitation that would require substantial change in the original prism of the road.

**Redd**- A nest made in gravel, consisting of a depression a fish digs to deposit eggs and its associated gravel mounds.

**Registered professional forester (RPF)**— A person who holds a valid license as a professional forester pursuant to Article 3, Section 2, Division 1 of the California Public Resources Code.

**Reproductive rate** (i.e., nesting success+ Reproductive rate is calculated annually by dividing the total number of fledglings observed by the total number of NSO pairs monitored to determine reproductive output.

**Residual timber stands**- Stands of timber that have been selectively harvested, leaving behind some of the original old-growth trees.

**Riparian management zone (RMZ)**— The area on either side of Class I, Class II, or Class III waters that receives special treatment. May refer to any combination of the following: no harvest band, selective entry band, outer band and/or sediment filtration band.

**Riparian** vegetation- Vegetation growing on or near the banks of a stream or other body of water in soils that exhibit some wetness characteristics during some portion of the growing season.

**Run (fish)**- A group of fish migrating in a river (most often on a spawning migration) that may comprise one or many stocks.

**Salmonids**- Fish of the family Salmonidae, including salmon, trout, chars, whitefish, ciscoes, and grayling.

**Sand**- Substrate particles 0.061 to 2 mm in diameter.

**Sanitation salvage**- Sanitation is the removal of insect-attacked or diseased trees in order to maintain or improve the health of the stand. Salvage is the removal of only those trees that are dead, dying, or deteriorating because of damage from fire, wind, insects, disease, flood or other

## GLOSSARY (CONTINUED)

injurious agent. Sanitation and salvage may be combined into a single operation and for the purposes of this plan are considered the same operation.

**Section 2080**— The section of the California Endangered Species Act that prohibits the “taking” of endangered and threatened species listed by the California Fish and Game Commission and species that the Commission has elevated to the status of candidates for such listing.

**Section 2081(b), Section 2081(b) Permit**- The section of the California Endangered Species Act through which the California Department of Fish and Game may authorize, by permit, the take of endangered species, threatened species, and candidate species.

**Section 7**-The section of the federal Endangered Species Act, codified at 16 USC § 1536, that provides for consultation between federal agencies **and** the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service to ensure that any action authorized, funded, or carried out by such agencies is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any endangered or threatened species or result in the destruction or adverse **modification** of critical habitat of such species.

**Section 9**— The section of the federal Endangered Species Act, codified at 16 USC § 1538, that prohibits the “taking” of any listed species.

**Section 10(a)**— The section of the federal Endangered Species Act, codified at 16 USC § 1539(a), that **allows** taking of a listed species for scientific purposes and taking incidental to otherwise lawful activities subject to approval of the Department of Interior or the Department of Commerce as appropriate; both types of take require permits.

**Sediment**- Fragments of rock, soil, and organic material transported and deposited in beds by wind, water, or other natural phenomena.

**Sediment filtration band**- The second band (30 to 50 feet, or 100 feet) in the Class III **RMZs**. Timber harvest is allowed in this band.

**Sedimentation**- Deposition of material suspended in water or air, usually when the velocity of the transporting medium drops below the level at which the material can be supported.

**Selective entry band**- The second band (30 to 130 feet) in Class II **RMZs**. Under certain circumstances, selected timber harvest can occur 30 to 50 feet or 100 feet, in this band.

**Sensitive species**-- Here, a category of species designated for special protection by the California Board of Forestry.

**Silt**- Substrate particles 0.004 to 0.062 mm in diameter.

**Slash**- Branches or limbs less than four inches in diameter, and bark and split products debris **left** on the ground as a result of timber operations (Z'berg-Nejedly Forest Practice Act of 1973).

**Snag**- A standing dead tree.

**Species**- Any distinct population of wildlife that interbreeds when mature.

**Stream**- A natural watercourse as designated by a solid line or dash and three dots symbol shown on the largest scale United States Geological Survey map most recently published (Z'berg-Nejedly Forest Practice Act of 1973).

## GLOSSARY (CONTINUED)

Stream order- A number **from** one to six or higher, ranked **from** headwaters to river terminus, that designates the relative position of a stream or stream segment in a drainage basin. **First**-order streams have no discrete tributaries; the junction of two first-order streams produces a second-order stream; the junction of two second-order streams produces a third-order stream; etc.

Substrate- Mineral or organic material that forms the bed of a stream.

Suitable NSO habitat- Suitable NSO habitat is an area characterized by foraging, roosting, and nesting.

Suspended Sediment- That part of a water's total sediment load carried in the water column.

Take- As **defined** in the federal Endangered Species Act, to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect a threatened or endangered species, or attempt to do so. See also "**harm**" and "harass." As **defined** in CESA, take means to hunt, pursue, catch, capture, or kill, or to attempt to hunt, pursue, catch, capture, or kill.

Thalweg- The deepest point of a watercourse along any channel cross section.

Threatened species- Any species or subspecies that is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

Timber harvesting plan (**THP**)— A three-year plan for the harvesting of commercial timberlands that (1) must be prepared by a registered professional forester, (2) must be filed with and approved by the **California** Department of Forestry, and (3) must contain detailed information about the land to be harvested, the silviculture methods to be applied, special provisions (if any) to protect unique and sensitive resources in the area, the dates when timber operations will begin and end, and any other information that may be required by the California State Board of Forestry.

Timberland- Land, other than land owned by the federal government and land designated by the California Board of Forestry as experimental forestland, which is available for, and capable of, growing a crop of trees of any commercial species used to produce lumber and other forest products, including Christmas trees. Commercial species are determined by the state board on a district basis (**Z'berg-Nejedly** Forest Practice Act of 1973).

Timber operations- The cutting or removal of timber or other solid wood forest products, including Christmas trees, from timberlands for commercial purposes, together with all the work incidental thereto, including, but not limited to, construction and maintenance of roads, fuelbreaks, firebreaks, stream crossings, landings, skid trails, beds for the falling of trees, and fire hazard abatement, but excluding preparatory work such as tree marking, surveying, or road flagging (**Z'berg-Nejedly** Forest Practice Act of 1973).

Unstable area- Characterized by slide areas or by some or **all** of the following- **hummocky** topography consisting of rolling bumpy ground, frequent benches, and depressions; short irregular surface drainages that begin and end on the slope; tension cracks and **headwall scarps**; slopes that are irregular and may be slightly concave in the upper half and convex in the lower half from previous slope failure; evidence of impaired groundwater movement resulting **in** **local** zones of saturation within the soil mass that are **indicated** at the surface by **sag** ponds **with**

## GLOSSARY (CONTINUED)

standing water, springs, or patches of wet ground. Some or all of the following may be present- hydrophytic vegetation is prevalent; leaning, **jackstrawed**, or split trees are common; pistol-butted trees with excessive sweep may occur in areas of **hummocky** topography (leaning trees should be used as indicators of unstable areas only in the presence of other indicators).

Watercourse- Any well-defined channel with distinguishable bed and bank showing evidence of having contained flowing water indicated by deposit of rock, sand, gravel, or soil, including but not limited to streams.

Waters- Includes streams, watercourses, seeps, springs, lakes, ponds, and wetlands.

Watercourse or Lake Transition Line- That line closest to the watercourse or lake where riparian vegetation is permanently established. Willows are not considered permanent vegetation.

Watershed- see "Drainage Area."

wildlife agencies-- United States Fish and Wildlife Service (**USFWS**); National Marine Fisheries Service (**NMFS**); and California Department of Fish and Game (**CDFG**).

Wildlife Habitat Relationships (**WHR**) **System**— A vegetation classification system that is correlated to a computer model developed to evaluate the characteristics of forest **and** other habitat types in California with the habitat requirements of birds, mammals, reptiles, and amphibians species.

Yarding: Movement of timber **from** the point of felling to a yarder, road, or landing.

# 1 ORGANIZATION

This Habitat Conservation Plan (HCP or Plan) is the HCP prepared in response to the requirements of the federal Endangered Species Act (**FESA**) and California Fish and Game Code (**FGC**). This document includes the HCP elements required by the FESA. The HCP elements covered in this document include impacts to the covered species and the operating conservation program, including minimization, mitigation, and monitoring measures, alternatives considered, funding, and other measures. See Figure 1 for a map of the entire Planning Area.



## 2 PLANNING CONTEXT

Preparation of this Plan has been guided by the following:

- Species protection requirements, incidental take provisions, and other sections of the FESA and the California FGC (including, but not limited to, the California Endangered Species Act (**CESA**))
- The agreement reached in September 1996 regarding the transfer of approximately 7,500 acres of Pacific Lumber Company (PALCO) and Elk River Timber Company (**ERTC**) properties to the United States of America and the state of California (Headwaters Agreement)
- The Pre-permit Application Agreement in Principle reached in February 1998 regarding components and completion of this Plan and interim measures to be implemented by PALCO (Agreement in Principle)
- The Draft **SYP/HCP** and public comments

### 2.1 HCP CONSIDERATIONS

Consistent with the objectives of the FESA and the California Fish and Game Code (**FGC**), the Plan is a long-term comprehensive program to ensure the continued health of the biological communities on PALCO's property and to minimize and mitigate impacts of PALCO activities on individual species. In this regard, the Plan has both a multi-species and a habitat focus; it also has a **specific** legal purpose with regard to impacts to species and habitats.

Similar to other habitat-based multi-species **HCPs** (e.g., Plum Creek and plans approved in southern California under the Natural Community Conservation Planning [**NCCP**] Act), this Plan was developed by focusing on the requirements of selected species (focus species) while also addressing the needs of other species in the same habitat. This tiered approach is an essential feature of the Plan's terrestrial and aquatic conservation strategies. Marbled murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*) and northern spotted owl (*Strix occidentalis caurina*) are the focus species for the terrestrial strategy, and the measures for these two birds are designed to benefit a broad range of other species in PALCO's managed forests. Some measures, such as the establishment of marbled murrelet conservation areas (**MMCAs**), preserve and protect Focus and other species in **specific** locations. Other measures, such as maintaining a **mix** of seral **types** across the landscape and retaining structural components of wildlife habitat, benefit Focus and other species by sustaining important features of the larger ecosystem. The Plan's aquatic habitat conservation strategy functions in a similar way. In this case, the focus species are four fish (coho salmon in the southern Oregon/northern California coastal evolutionary significant unit [**ESU**], *Oncorhynchus kisutch*; chinook salmon in the southern Oregon/California coastal ESU, *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*; cutthroat trout in the southern Oregon/California coast ESU, *Oncorhynchus clarki*, and steelhead trout in the northern California ESU, *Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Measures for these species focus on habitat conditions in fish-bearing streams and extend outward to encompass **riparian** zones and entire watersheds.

As described in Part A of Volume V, of the July 1998 Draft **SYP/HCP** a primary purpose of the Plan is to provide the basis for the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (**USFWS**), the National

Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), and the **California** Department of Fish and Game (CDFG) to authorize incidental take of certain listed species, including some species that currently are not, but may be, listed during the life of the Plan. Specifically, PALCO is seeking authorization for incidental take from USFWS and NMFS pursuant to Section **10(a)** of the FESA and from CDFG pursuant to Section 2081(b) of the FGC. For purposes of the incidental take permits (ITPs), the Plan does the following:

1. Identifies the species that would be covered by the permits (covered species)
2. Treats unlisted covered species as if they were listed
3. Identifies alternatives to the taking, and presents the **reasons** why the alternatives were not employed
4. Examines the impacts of the proposed take on the species
5. Identifies measures to minimize and mitigate impacts
6. Includes provisions for responding to changed and unforeseen circumstances
7. Provides assurances that adequate funding is available for implementation
8. Provides assurances that the Plan will be implemented

In connection with ongoing timber operations and implementation of the Plan, PALCO also is seeking a five-year renewable Streambed Alteration Agreement with CDFG pursuant to Section 1603 of the FGC. For purposes of the 1603 agreement, the Plan identifies PALCO plan area activities with the potential to alter streams and riparian areas under **CDFG's** jurisdiction and substantially adversely affect fish and wildlife resources. The 1603 Agreement identifies measures for certain of these PALCO plan area activities that are covered under the 1603 Agreement that PALCO will implement to avoid, minimize, and mitigate such impacts. This Plan is the HCP submitted with PALCO's ITP applications to USFWS and NMFS and provides the information and analysis CDFG requires for its consideration of incidental take authorization.

## **2.2 HEADWATERS AGREEMENT**

The September 1996 Headwaters Agreement (**FEIS**, Appendix A) contemplates government acquisition of timberlands from PALCO and another landowner to preserve approximately 7,500 acres of old-growth and young-growth timber stands and associated **buffers** in a nature reserve. **As** proposed, PALCO would transfer ownership of **two** unentered old-growth timber stands and associated buffers (i.e., PALCO's Headwaters and Elk Head Springs timber stands) to the state and federal governments. PALCO also has voluntarily agreed to refrain from logging activities (including salvage logging) in the **specified** stands pending the development of this Plan. In exchange for the transferred lands, PALCO would receive approximately 7,700 acres of previously harvested timberlands and other consideration (including cash) with an aggregate value of \$380 million. Among other things, the Headwaters Agreement conditions the transactions on PALCO's dismissal of pending lawsuits alleging that the state and federal governments have taken PALCO's property in violation of the state and federal constitutions, and on completion and approval of a SYP and HCP for PALCO's property that is acceptable to PALCO. The transactions also are expressly conditioned on compliance with applicable law,

including the National Environmental Policy Act (**NEPA**) and the California Environmental Quality Act (**CEQA**). This Plan is the HCP cited in the September 1996 Headwaters Agreement.

## **2.3 AGREEMENT IN PRINCIPLE**

The February 1998 Agreement in Principle (**FEIS**, Appendix C) established a framework for the development of the **Draft SYP/HCP**. It defined certain components of PALCO's ITP applications, addressed procedures for completion of the July 1998 **Draft SYP/HCP**, and provided for PALCO's implementation of certain conservation measures in the interim. Among other provisions, the agreement includes the following:

- Indicates that PALCO will apply for **ITPs** that cover 50 years
- Identifies PALCO lands in addition to the Headwaters and Elk Head Springs stands that will be conserved for the marbled murrelet and other species
- States PALCO's commitments regarding implementation of specific stream-related measures in pending **THPs** prior to issuance of the **ITPs** and inclusion of those measures in the July 1998 Draft **SYP/HCP**

The Agreement in Principle did not provide any advance approval of the **SYP/HCP** by the responsible agencies. As with the Headwaters transactions, approval and implementation of this Plan is subject to all applicable laws, including NEPA and CEQA.

## 3 SCOPE OF THE PLAN

### 3.1 PLAN AND PERMIT AREA

The plan area for this HCP is **defined** as **PALCO's** ownership as it is anticipated to exist on and following the effective date of the **ITPs**. **As** shown in the **July** 1998 Draft **SYP/HCP**, Map 2 in Volume IV, which is hereby incorporated by reference, the initial plan area **will** include approximately 211,700 acres in Humboldt County, California. Except as noted below, the area covered by the **ITPs** is the same as the plan area. Over time, it is anticipated that additional lands **will** become part of the plan area, be subject to the provisions of the Plan, and, with certain exceptions, be covered by the **ITPs**. It also is anticipated that over time some lands in the plan area may be transferred to other owners through land trades and sales. The Implementation Agreement (IA) (FEIS, Appendix **S**) for this Plan includes provisions for such additions and deletions. See Table 1. The Operating Conversation Plan (**OCP**), as a covered activity, includes various scientific surveys and studies; a Section **10(a)(1)(A)** permit might be required and would be issued under a separate request.

### 3.2 PLAN AND PERMIT PERIOD

The term **PALCO** is seeking for the **ITPs** is 50 years.

### 3.3 COVERED SPECIES

For **SYP** as well as **HCP** purposes, listed and a select list of sensitive species potentially affected by activities in the plan area have been identified as below covered species for which **PALCO** is seeking **ITPs**. **PALCO** may seek to amend the Plan and the **ITPs** in the future to include one or more other species.

The covered species under this Plan are the marbled murrelet, northern spotted owl, chinook salmon in the southern Oregon/California coastal ESU, **coho** salmon in the southern Oregon/northern California coastal ESU, cutthroat trout in the southern Oregon/California coast ESU, steelhead trout in the northern California ESU, southern torrent salamander, tailed frog, red-legged **frog**, **foothill** yellow-legged frog, northwestern pond turtle, bald eagle, American peregrine falcon, western snowy plover, bank swallow, Pacific fisher, and California red tree vole (Table 2).

### 3.4 COVERED ACTIVITIES

Subject to the conditions **and** restrictions identified in this Plan and specified in the **ITPs**, the following activities would be covered by the authorizations for incidental take.

#### 3.4.1 Timber Management

Timber management is the primary activity in the plan area, occurring on approximately 203,000 acres. Management activities include timber harvest and regeneration, site preparation, planting, vegetation management, thinning, and **fire** suppression.

**Table 1. Watershed Assessment Areas (acres)**

Ownership Category	WAA						TOTAL
	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	Humboldt Bay	Yager	Van Duzen	Eel	Bear-Mnttdt	Other Lands'	
PALCO	38,777	34,107	24,934	75,457	34,528	3,903	211,706
Large Industrial	20,148	5,456	9,524	4,036	14,365	0	53,529
Other Private	60,895	44,068	19,998	287,187	204,614	0	616,762
<b>Parks<sup>2</sup></b>	7,367	23	837	48,930	236	0	57,393
Government <sup>3</sup>	850	900	48	9,768	50,795	0	62,361
Not Classified	553	0	0	568	206	0	1327
<b>Total Area</b>	<b>128,590</b>	<b>84,554</b>	<b>55,341</b>	<b>425,946</b>	<b>304,744</b>	<b>3,903</b>	<b>1,003,078</b>

**Ownership Categories**

PALCO	Cumnt ownership, excluding lands to be <b>transferred</b> to government ownership and including lands to be <b>transferred</b> to PALCO under the Headwaters Agreement.
Large Industrial	Other large <b>commercial</b> timber landowners.
Other Private	Small commercial timber landowners and other privately-held lands.
Parks	Local, state, and federal parks and reserves.
Government	Non-park federal and state lands.
Not Classified	Ownership could not be determined.

**Notes**

- 1 Includes PALCO lands outside the other five **WAAs**.
- 2 Includes the proposed Headwaters and **Elkhead** Springs reserve in the Humboldt Bay WAA.
- 3 Includes **7,000+** acres administered by the US Forest Service in the **Eel** WAA.

**Table 2. Covered (List A) Species**

<b>Species Common and Scientific Name</b>	<b>Federal Status</b>	<b>State Status</b>
Focus Species		
Marbled murrelet, <i>Brachyramphus marmoratus</i>	<b>FT</b>	CE
Northern spotted owl, <i>Strix occidentalis caurina</i>	<b>FT</b>	CSSC, BOF
Chinook salmon, <i>Oncorhynchus tshawytscha</i>	<b>FPT</b>	CSSC
Coho salmon, <i>Oncorhynchus kisutch</i>	<b>FT</b>	CCT
Cutthroat trout, <i>Oncorhynchus clarki</i>	FSR	CSSC
<b>Steelhead/rainbow</b> trout, <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>	FSR	CSSC
<b>Other List A Species</b>		
Amphibians		
<b>Southern</b> torrent salamander, <i>Rhyacotriton variegatus</i>		CSSC
Tailed <i>frog</i> , <i>Ascaphus truei</i>		CSSC
Red-legged frog, <i>Rana aurora</i>		CSSC
Foothill yellow-legged frog, <i>RUM boylei</i>		CSSC
Reptiles		
Northwestern pond turtle, <i>Clemmys marmorata marmorata</i>		CSSC
Birds		
Bald eagle, <i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i>	<b>FT, BEPA</b>	CE, BOF, CFP
American peregrine falcon, <i>Falco peregrinus anatum</i>	<i>FE</i>	CE, BOF, CFP
Western snowy plover, Charadrius <i>alexandrinus nivosus</i>	<b>FT</b>	CSSC
Bank swallow, <i>Riparia riparia</i>		CT
<b>Mammals</b>		
California red tree vole, <i>Arborimus pomo</i>		CSSC
Pacific fisher, <i>Martes pennanti pacifica</i>		CSSC
<b>Codes</b>		
<b>BEPA</b>	Bald Eagle (and Golden Eagle) Protection Act	FE Federal endangered species
<b>BOF</b>	Board of Forestry sensitive species	<b>FPT</b> Proposed for federal listing as threatened
<b>CCT</b>	California candidate for listing as threatened	FSR Federal status review
<b>CE</b>	California endangered species	<b>FT</b> Federal threatened species
<b>CFP</b>	California fully protected species	
<b>CSSC</b>	California species of special concern	
<b>CT</b>	California threatened <b>species</b>	

### 3.4.1 .1 Timber Harvesting and Regeneration Methods

Before a forest stand can be harvested, a RPF must prepare a THP. The THP is reviewed by state and, in some cases, federal agencies for consistency with all applicable laws and regulations to ensure that potentially significant environmental impacts are analyzed and fully mitigated to the extent feasible. This requirement has applied to commercial timber operations in California since 1973 (see July 1998 **Draft SYP/HCP**, Part A in Volume V for additional details).

In the plan area, even-aged and uneven-aged silvicultural prescriptions will be used. **Even-aged** silviculture is used to regenerate a stand of trees approximately **the** same age. This objective is achieved by harvesting stands in blocks that typically range in size **from** 20 to 30 acres. Harvest methods include seed tree removal, shelterwood removal, and clearcutting. Regeneration occurs artificially through planting nursery-grown seedlings, or naturally by **well-**distributed seed trees. Uneven-aged silviculture is used to harvest trees individually or in

small groups, with the goal of developing or maintaining a variety of age classes within a stand. Typically, sites are restocked through natural regeneration; where necessary, seedlings obtained **from** a nursery are also used. Harvesting operations begin with the felling and bucking of trees. Logs are moved (yarded) to a landing site using methods based on topographic considerations, access, worker safety, and other factors. Generally, tractor-based systems are used on relatively mild terrain, cable yarders are used on steeper slopes, and helicopters are used in areas where road access is a problem. At the landings, the logs are loaded onto trucks and transported to processing facilities (mills) over private and public roads.

#### 3.4.1.2 Site Preparation

Depending **onsite** conditions, excessive amounts of slash (mostly branches from trees) and unwanted shrub and tree species are removed. This is typically accomplished by a broadcast burn or, less commonly, by mechanical methods. This treatment only applies to **clearcut** sites where excessive quantities of slash prevent tree planters from successfully planting trees uniformly throughout the harvest unit. The treatment also has the additional benefit of reducing the potential for wildfire to ignite or spread through the site. Broadcast burning permits must be obtained from CDF and the regional air quality board. If needed, fire trails are constructed to protect resources at risk (e.g., **riparian** habitat adjacent to a stream). Personnel are located **onsite** to monitor the burn and to take action in the event of an escape.

#### 3.4.1.3 Planting

Artificial regeneration is principally used to ensure that stocking requirements specified in the California Forest Practice Rules (**FPRs**) are met. The usual practice is to plant seedlings in those areas that have been clear-cut. Seedlings are purchased from a variety of vendors and selected to fit the environmental conditions of site where they will be planted.

#### 3.4.1.4 Vegetation Management

Some sites may require one or more vegetation management treatments to reduce the impacts of unwanted competing vegetation on the growth of seedlings. Such treatments commonly involve the application of herbicides. Vegetation management conducted through use of forest chemicals such as herbicides, pesticides, and fertilizers is not a covered activity under the **ITPs**. Mechanical methods may also be used to control unwanted vegetation.

#### 3.4.1.5 Thinning

Overstocked even-aged stands will be thinned, where appropriate, to redistribute the growth potential of the site to fewer conifer trees. When such an operation occurs in a very young stand (approximately 15 years old), it is called precommercial thinning. Stems are cut down and left on the site to decay. Commercial thinning requires preparation of a **THP** and may occur in stands as young as 35 years. Leave trees (i.e., the trees that will be retained) are selected to ensure that they are evenly distributed throughout the site and have the potential to take advantage of the increased growing space. **The** harvested trees are yarded to a landing, loaded **onto** trucks, and transported to a processing facility.

### 3.4.1.6 Fire Suppression

In response to wildfires, activities similar to those used for escaped control burns are used to minimize the total number of **affected** acres. These activities will be covered by the **ITPs** and, fire management plans will be prepared for the **MMCA**s as part of this HCP.

### 3.4.2 Roads and landings

Activities for the maintenance, improvement, construction, and closure of roads and landings include the following:

1. Implementation of **PALCO's** stormproofing program
2. Construction of new roads in connection with timber management, including clearing vegetation from road rights-of-way, removing trees, grubbing (removing stumps **and** surface **organics**), grading, and compaction
3. Extraction of rock, sand, and gravel from small borrow pits for use in road construction and maintenance, drainage **facility** repair, and erosion control
4. Construction of stream crossings (bridges, culverted fills, fords, and a variety of temporary crossings)
5. Maintenance of surfaced roads, seasonal roads, culverts, bridges, fords, cuts and fillslopes
6. Closure of roads, temporarily (i.e., decommissioned) or permanently (i.e., abandoned)

Approximately 150 miles of new roads will be added in the plan area in the first decade of Plan implementation; 100 miles in the second decade, 75 miles in the third decade, 50 miles in the fourth decade, and 25 miles in the fifth decade. At least 750 miles of existing roads will be stormproofed per decade within the first 20 years until all roads on the property have been brought up to that standard.

Additional details regarding road-related activities are provided in the Guidelines for Forest Roads and Landings (July 1998 Draft **SYP/HCP**, Part N of Volume II).

### 3.4.3 Commercial Rock Quarries

PALCO operates two permitted commercial hard rock quarries in the plan area. The two commercial quarries are identified as Rock Quarry 1/Road 24 and Rock Quarry 2/Road 9.

- Rock Quarry 1/Road 24 is located in the Yager Creek drainage, approximately five miles upstream from Carlotta, California. The approved Humboldt County conditional use permit and the approved mining and reclamation plan for the quarry provide for a total production of approximately 125,000 cubic yards of aggregate material. The entire quarry site includes approximately 3.5 acres.
- Rock Quarry 2/Road 9 is located in the Lawrence Creek drainage of the Yager Creek watershed. It was operated for many years for in-house use only. Since approval of the conditional use permit, it has been mined for commercial purposes. The volume of available material in Quarry 2 is estimated at approximately 450,000 cubic yards.

These two existing **quarry** operations will be covered by the **ITPs** for two years.

Coverage for these operations beyond the two-year period and coverage for any additional quarry sites proposed by PALCO will require amendments to the **ITPs** and Plan.

**Quarry** operations involve excavation, drilling, blasting, screening, loading and hauling. Activities ancillary to the quarry operation include road relocation, erosion control, annual closure, and final reclamation. Materials are hauled off-site and transported by truck or rail to their ultimate destination for use as slope stabilization, bedding, and road base. Operations are seasonal, with most mining **occurring from** April through November. Minor quarrying may occur **from** December through March in response to local demand for material or the need to provide material for erosion control or road stormproofing activity. Additional information about the quarries is provided in July 1998 Draft **SYP/HCP**, Part J of Volume II.

PALCO also uses many small sand or rock sources (borrow **pits**) in the plan area for road maintenance, drainage facility repair, and erosion control. Because of their small size and minor impacts, these borrow pits do not require permits under federal or state regulations and are not mapped or inventoried. Activities associated with these borrow pits are part of **PALCO's** road and sediment control program and are covered by the **ITPs** for five years after the effective date. Coverage for borrow pits beyond the five-year period will require an amendment to the **ITPs**.

## **4 BASELINE CONDITIONS**

A description of baseline conditions is presented in the **EIS/EIR** for this project. See Tables 3, 4, and 5.

**Table 3. Baseline Conditions**

Factor	<b>WAA 1 Humboldt</b>	<b>WAA 2 Yager</b>	<b>WAA 3 van Duzen</b>	<b>WAA4 Eel</b>	<b>WAAS Bear-Mattole</b>	<b>WAA6 OtherLands</b>	TOTAL
<b>Seral Type (acres)</b>							
<b>Forest opening</b>	2,521	989	759	5,454	2,882	11	12,616
Young Forest	6,120	15,282	2,971	12,325	1,804	0	38,502
Mid-successional	12,069	11,014	14,306	25,878	21,140	3,364	87,771
LateSet-al	17,461	3,881	5,907	24,440	1,541	6	53,236
Old Growth	71	1,761	153	1,098	3,360	0	6,443
Hardwood	246	221	61	3,010	487	241	4,266
Prairie	0	277	<b>55</b>	973	<b>2,251</b>	281	3,837
Open/non-timber	289	684	721	2,275	1,069	0	5,038
<b>Site Productivity (acres)</b>							
Site Class 1	516	676	1,388	1,711	43	0	4,335
Site Class 2	37,830	32,098	22,342	68,194	27,739	3,334	191,536
Site Class 3	142	347	460	1,827	2,990	198	5,964
Site Class 8	0	3s	14	<b>515</b>	487	89	1,141
Site Class 9	289	954	729	3,206	3,271	281	8,729
<b>Watercourses (stream miles)</b>							
class I	52	56	30	80	44	3	265
Class II	131	123	83	280	118	16	751
Totals	183	179	114	360	161	19	1,017
<b>WLPZs (acres)</b>							
Class I WLPZs	2,113	2,267	1,256	3,577	1,731	140	11,084
Class II WLPZs	2,995	2,686	1,870	6,312	2,648	356	16,866 <sup>1/</sup>
Totals	5,108	4,953	3,126	9,889	4,378	496	<b>27,951</b>
<b>Roads (miles)</b>							
Paved/rocked	117.0	142.7	50.5	181.1	15.1	4.7	511.1
Dirt	163.6	125.7	123.4	388.4	141.6	7.0	949.7
Stormproofed	9.5	29.1	0	0	0	0	38.6
Reconstructed	8.4	0.5	3.3	16.3	1.6	0	30.1
Decommissioned	0	1.6	0	0	0	0	1.6
Abandoned	0.6	1.3	0	0	0	0	1.9
Total existing	299.1	300.9	177.2	585.8	158.3	11.7	1533.0
Proposed (first decade)	43.1	15.8	14.8	57.1	15.1	0.4	146.3
Existing and Proposed	342.2	316.7	192.0	642.9	173.4	12.1	<b>1,679.3</b>
<b>Surface Erosion Ratings (acres)</b>							
<b>Low</b>	28,471	29,249	15,263	44,354	12,548	1,905	131,791
Moderate	10,201	4,811	9,201	28,964	20,510	1,651	75,338
High	1	20	108	372	1,331	347	2,178
Extreme	104	27	362	1,151	139	0	1,782
No Data	0	0	0	617	0	0	617
<b>Landslide Hazard Ratings (acres)</b>							
<b>Very Low</b>	557	302	1,614	5,965	4,894	438	13,770
<b>Low</b>	22,842	6,745	9,036	32,046	8,587	382	79,638
Moderate	8,643	2,681	4,724	21,648	8,743	107	46,546
High	2,195	986	1,868	10,805	7,900	7	23,761
Very High	263	364	532	3,557	4,187	0	8,903
Extreme	0	1	<b>5</b>	146	206	0	358
No Data	4,278	23,028	7,155	1,291	11	2,969	38,731
Disturbance index (%) <sup>2/</sup>	15.5	16.8	5.9	12.8	4.3	Not known	11.5

<sup>1/</sup> The estimate of acreage for Class II streams is 23,668 acres. The number in the table, 16,866, appears to be in error.

<sup>2/</sup> The disturbance index values do not include values for landslide and roads.

**Table 4. Distribution of List A Species in the Plan Area**

Lii A <b>Focus</b> Species	
Marbled <b>murrelet</b>	Most old-growth and some residual stands in Plan Area considered actual or potential nesting habitat for this species. Occupied behaviors detected in surveys in 26 stands.
Northern spotted owl	Widely distributed in Plan Area; 147 known owl sites on PALCO ownership. Plan Area includes approximately 80,300 acres of high-quality nesting habitat, 10,600 acres of medium-quality nesting habitat, 70,300 acres of low-quality nesting habitat, 10,800 acres of roosting habitat, and 18,000 acres of foraging habitat.
Chinook <b>salmon</b>	Occur in low numbers throughout Plan Area; data on abundance and distribution within individual watersheds vary. Habitat estimated to occur in approximately 82 miles of streams in the Plan Area.
<b>Coho</b> salmon	Known or thought to occur in large number of streams in each Plan <b>Area</b> watershed; data on abundance and distribution within individual watersheds vary. Habitat estimated to occur in approximately 66 miles of Plan Area streams.
<b>Cutthroat trout</b>	Anadromous cutthroat known to occur in Eel River, in <b>Strong</b> s Creek in the Eel watershed, in the North Fork Elk River watershed, and in Freshwater Creek; data generally not available on <b>occurrence</b> in other areas. Habitat estimated to occur in approximately 31 miles of Plan Area <b>streams</b> .
<b>Steelhead</b> trout	Most widely distributed <b>salmonid</b> in the Plan Area. Within upper Eel <b>WAA</b> , distribution limited by Scott Dam. Data on abundance and distribution within individual watersheds vary. Habitat estimated to occur in approximately 152 miles of streams in the Plan Area.
Other <b>List A</b> Species	
Southern torrent salamander	Widely distributed in suitable habitat in Plan Area. Observed in Bear-Mattole, Yager, Eel, Humboldt, and Van Duzen watersheds.
Tailed frog	Patchy but widespread distribution in suitable habitat in Plan Area. Observed in Humboldt, Yager, Van Duzen, Eel, and Bear-Mattole watersheds. Only the high-gradient reaches with substrates of consolidated parent material are likely to contain suitable habitat.
Red-legged frog	Based on incidental observations, locally abundant in suitable habitat in the Plan Area. Observed in Eel, Humboldt, and Van Duzen watersheds; presumed to occur in other watersheds.
Foothill yellow-legged <b>frog</b>	Commonly observed along major streams such as the <b>Eel</b> and Van Duzen Rivers; also reported from Yager and Bear-Mattole <b>WAAs</b> . Suspected to occur in suitable habitat in Humboldt <b>WAA</b> .
Northwestern pond turtle	Habitat relatively limited on the PALCO ownership; species detected in or near some of the major watercourses in Yager and Eel watersheds. Pond turtles appear to be present in low numbers in suitable habitat.
Bald <b>eagle</b>	No nest site records for PALCO ownership. Wintering birds rare to relatively common along Yager Creek and the Eel, Elk, and Van Duzen rivers; also seen along lower <b>Larabee</b> Creek, near the confluence with <b>Eel</b> River. Seen on PALCO lands generally between November and March (same time as runs of anadromous fish); 3 to 7 wintering birds seen in Yager watershed, 1 to 2 in Eel and Humboldt watersheds.
<b>American</b> peregrine falcon	In north coast region, an uncommon migrant and winter visitor, a rare, local breeder (approximately eight known sites in bioregion) and summer resident. One recorded nest site in Plan Area, on cliff adjacent to Eel River; site may have been damaged or eliminated during the winter of 1995 due to failure of the rock face.
Western snowy plover	Uncommon local migrant and winter visitor; rare, local breeder. Observed in the <b>bioregion</b> on inland river bars from the Eel River delta upstream to at least the mouth of the Van Duzen <b>River</b> .
Bank swallow	On north <b>coast</b> , considered a rare migrant and locally rare breeder. No nesting colonies are <b>known</b> on or near the PALCO ownership.
California red tree vole	Widespread in the Plan Area.
Pacific <b>fisher</b>	Detected in the Plan Area in the multi-species study in the Yager and Humboldt watersheds.

Table 5. Animal and Plant Species Richness by **Seral** Type

<b>Seral Type</b>	Animal species	<b>Plant</b> species
Forest Openings	72	88
Young Forests	127	130
Mid-successional	112	122
Late Successional	116	130
Montane Hardwood	76	98
Perennial Grassland	64	62

## 5 ALTERNATIVES CONSIDERED

The FESA requires that **HCPs** identify alternatives to the proposed taking and explain why such alternatives were not selected. A broad range of impact avoidance, mitigation, and conservation strategies were proposed and considered in the course of preparing this Plan, including variations on the LTSY projections and HCP strategies.

Four primary alternatives are summarized here: Take Avoidance; Selective Harvest; Expanded (61,000-acre) **Headwaters** Reserve; and Higher Midterm Timber Production.

### 5.1 TAKE AVOIDANCE

Under this alternative, activities in the plan area would be conducted in a manner to avoid take of any federally listed, state listed, or state candidate species. Since no take would occur, PALCO would not need or obtain **ITPs** from USFWS, NMFS, or CDFG. PALCO would not be obligated to implement measures to minimize and mitigate the effects of take. Consequently, the Headwaters Reserve would not be established, and the Plan would not be implemented. This alternative was rejected because it would not provide the following environmental benefits associated with the Plan as proposed:

1. Protection of the Headwaters Reserve, including buffer areas around the old-growth forest within the Reserve, in perpetuity
2. Protection of the **MMCA**s and associated internal buffer areas
3. Implementation of comprehensive, inter-related habitat conservation strategies for terrestrial and aquatic species in the plan area
4. Implementation of various conservation measures for non-listed covered species

This alternative also was rejected because of its potential negative effects, including the following:

1. Fragmentation of second growth and residual stands adjacent to old-growth areas with potential for resulting indirect impacts to old-growth habitat areas through potential increased predation on marbled murrelets
2. Continued economic uncertainty regarding the amount of harvest that might be expected from the **PALCO** property in the future and the resulting adverse economic impact to the economy of Humboldt County

### 5.2 SELECTIVE HARVEST

Under this alternative, the SYP elements of the Plan as proposed would be altered to eliminate clear-cutting and salvage logging in the plan area. Stands would be subject to selective harvest every 20 years, with a timber stand target of late **seral** forest conditions (**CWHR 6**). The maximum yearly harvest would be 2 percent of the timber inventory. In addition, a minimum of 20 percent of the property would have to be in late **seral** habitat. Two sub-alternatives for **RMZ**s also were considered:

- Forest Ecosystem Management Team (**FEMAT**) standard buffers maintained for the **term** of the **ITPs**
- FEMAT standard buffers as interim measures with final buffers being determined using a Washington Department of Natural Resources (**WDNR**) style watershed analysis

This alternative was not selected because a selective harvest strategy **would** require extensive road construction. It would limit PALCO's ability to use best **silvicultural** practices to manage its forests. The net improvement in aquatic protection over that in the proposed Plan is uncertain but is probably limited. The alternative would also have a **significant** negative economic impact on PALCO. With respect to economic impacts, the FEMAT buffers alone would render **PALCO's** ownership more than 50 percent **unharvestable**. (Map 36 in Volume V illustrates the application of FEMAT buffers to the plan area.)

### **5.3 EXPANDED -WATERS RESERVE**

Under this alternative, a **61,000-acre** reserve would be established instead the **7,500-acre** reserve contemplated in the Headwaters Agreement. The approximate design of the reserve would be a large circle encompassing the six redwood groves (Allen Creek, Shaw Creek, **Bell-Lawrence**, Right 9, Owl Creek, and **Elkhead** Springs) and the Headwaters tract and **buffer**. Outside of the reserve, the remainder of PALCO's property would be managed in the same manner as proposed in this Plan.

Approximately 30 percent of PALCO's holdings in the plan area would become part of the reserve, including stands with significant amounts of high-quality, old-growth timber. PALCO is unwilling to commit such a large amount of land to habitat without compensation, and neither the federal FESA nor CESA requires such a commitment. The only method of creating the preserve, then, is through condemnation or voluntary sale. Neither the federal nor the state government has demonstrated that funds are available to acquire the reserve; and California voters have turned down ballot measures aimed at acquiring this property. The acquisition amount would far exceed any conservation acquisition undertaken by the federal and state governments since the enactment of the Land and Water Conservation Fund. In the absence of available funds for acquisition of the land, this alternative is not practicable.

### **5.4 INCREASED MIDTERM PRODUCTION**

This alternative was developed to determine the possible upper range of timber production on PALCO's lands. Under this alternative, higher harvest levels would be allowed during the midterm of the **ITPs**. Riparian buffers would be 125 feet for Class I streams and 75 feet for Class II streams, with extensive timber harvest allowed within these zones. Limits on harvesting would be set by existing **FPRs**. No **MMCA**s would be established; however, the Headwaters transactions would be completed. This alternative was rejected primarily because of the inherent conflicts between the timber production goals of the approach and ITP requirements to **minimize**, as well as to mitigate, effects on listed species.

## 6 OPERATING CONSERVATION PROGRAMS

### 6.1 MARBLED MURRELET CONSERVATION PLAN

#### 6.1.1 Management Objective

Protect most of the best quality marbled murrelet occupied habitat on the property in a system of reserves and provide for improvement of habitat within the reserves during the life of the permit. Minimize the effects of management on populations within the reserves, and the effect on murrelets that may be using habitat authorized for harvest.

#### 6.1.2 Conservation Measures

##### 6.1.2.1 Establishment of Marbled Murrelet Conservation Areas and Other Protective Buffers

Establish the following MMCAs as described below.

- AU MMCAs will be protected for the life of the permit. Timber harvesting is prohibited in the MMCAs and the **Grizzly** Creek complex, including salvage logging and other management activities that are detrimental to the marbled murrelet or marbled murrelet habitat for the life of the ITP. The outlines of the MMCAs are shown in Figure 2. More detailed overview maps are provided in Figure 2.5-4 of the **FEIS/FEIR**. The acreages of the MMCAs are as follows: Elk Head Residual, 351 acres; Cooper Mill, 704 acres; Allen Creek, 1,428 acres; Allen Creek Extension, 301 acres; Road 3,564 acres; **Owl** Creek, 1,199 acres; Shaw Gift, 503 acres; Right Road 9,318 acres; Road 7 and 9 North, 492 acres; Booths Run, 784 acres; Bell Lawrence, 634 acres; and Lower North Fork Elk, 451 acres. The Grizzly Creek complex acreage is 1,409 acres.
- The **Owl** Creek MMCA will be protected for the life of the permit, and will include additions. Their outlines are also shown in Figures 3 and 4.
- The Grizzly Creek complex will include an additional 351 acres, as shown in Figure 4, and will be protected for the first five years of the permit. **As** described in the IA, at the end of five years, any portions of this area that have not been acquired for permanent protection by the state of California or others, and that still remain in **PALCO's** ownership, will be evaluated by a **scientific** review panel and USFWS and CDFG. The agencies will then make a finding as to whether allowing timber harvest and the other covered activities in the complex would jeopardize the marbled mm-relet. If the agencies determine that harvest of the area would jeopardize the murrelet, the area would be protected as an MMCA for the life of the permit. If the agencies determine that harvest of the area would not jeopardize the species, the area would not be designated as an MMCA and would be managed in accordance with the **HCP's** OCP for covered lands outside of **MMCAs**.
- A process will be established for further delineation of boundaries of MMCAs and conditions within MMCAs within first year of the permit. Aerial photos, maps, written descriptions, and where feasible, global positioning system (GPS) points, will be used to describe boundaries. Videos will document existing conditions along all roads within MMCAs. When **THPs** are proposed in stands contiguous with

Figure 2

**Pacific Lumber HCP  
Murrelet  
Conservation  
Areas  
as Expanded  
December 1998**

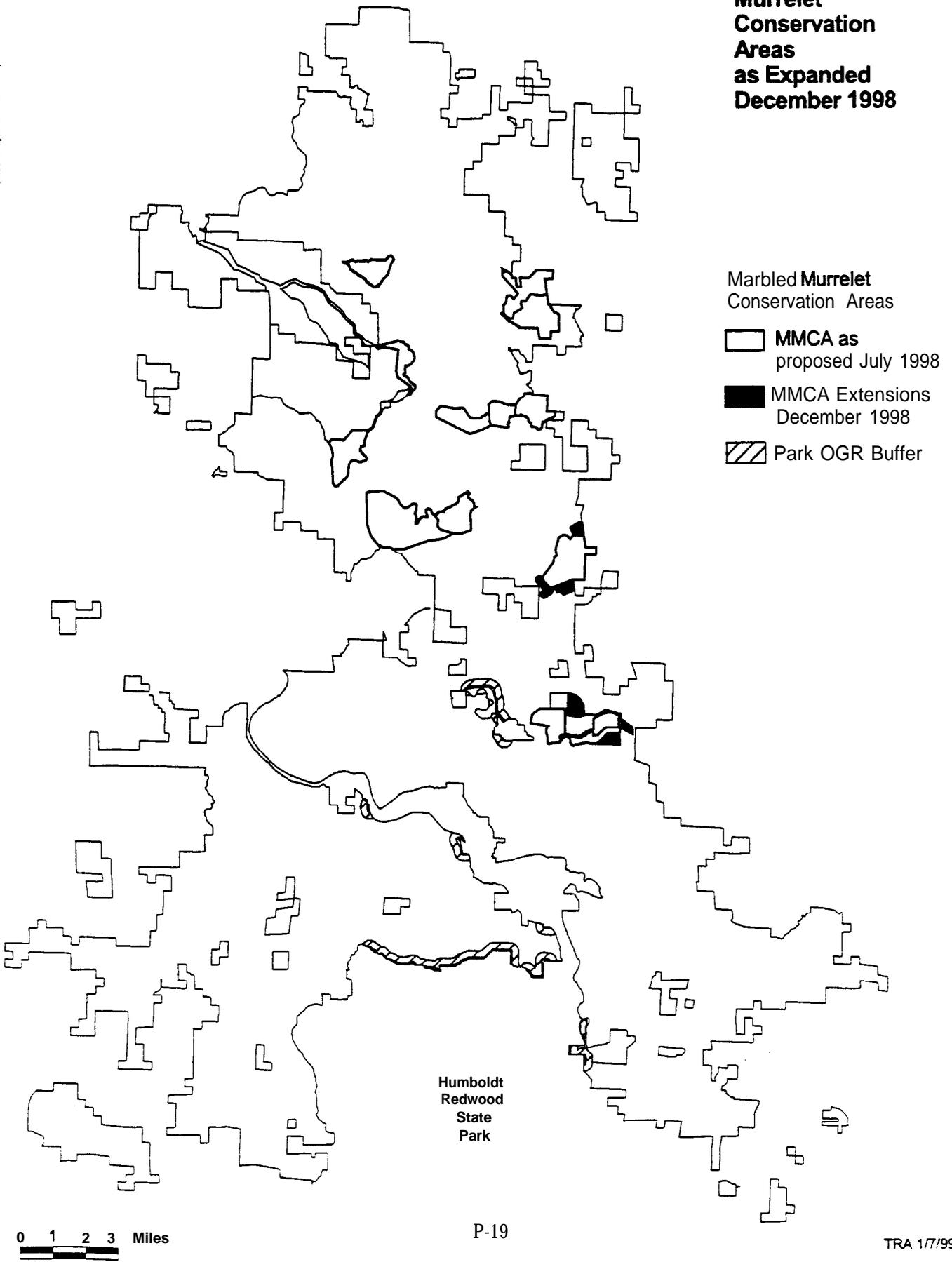
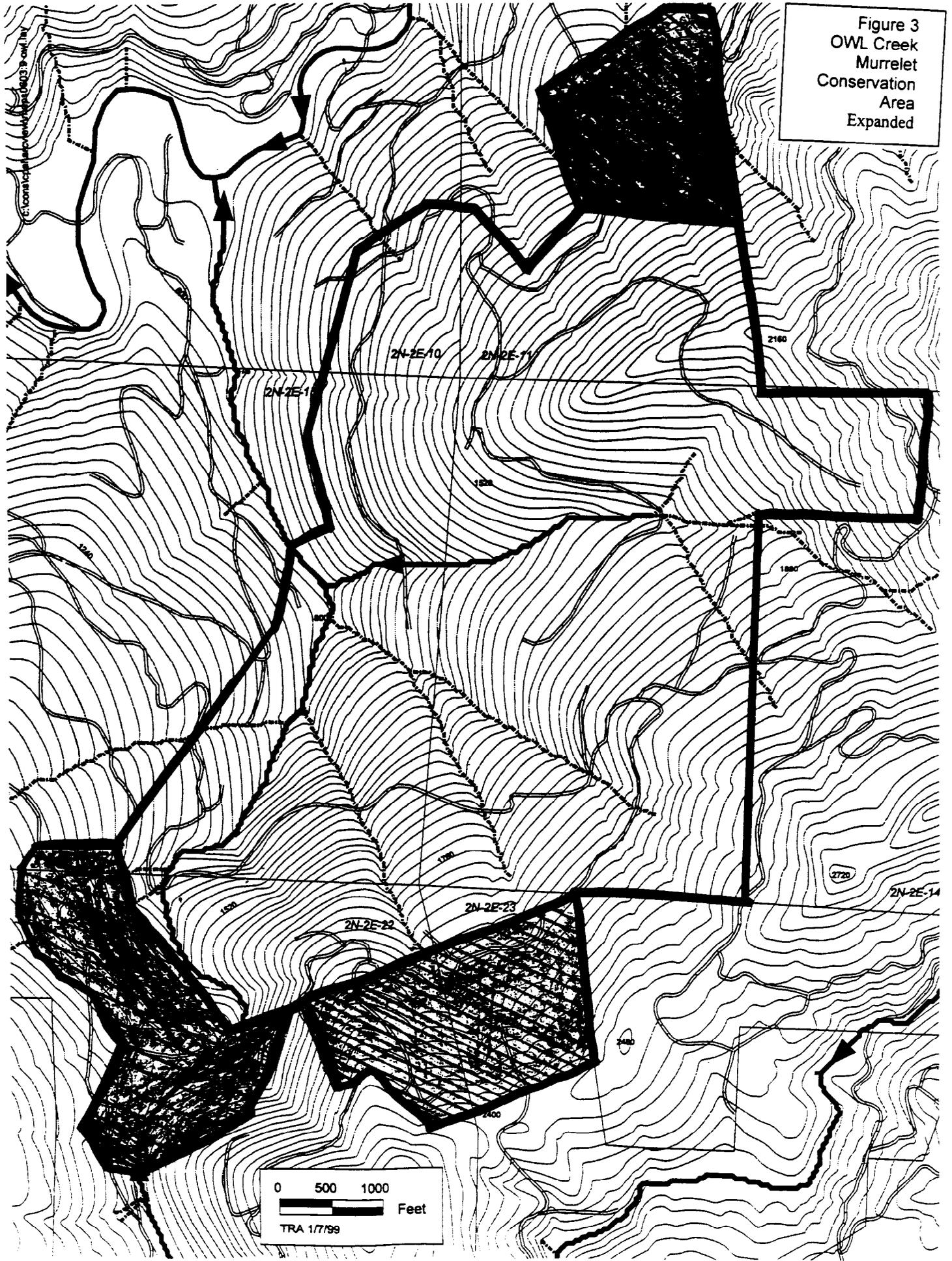
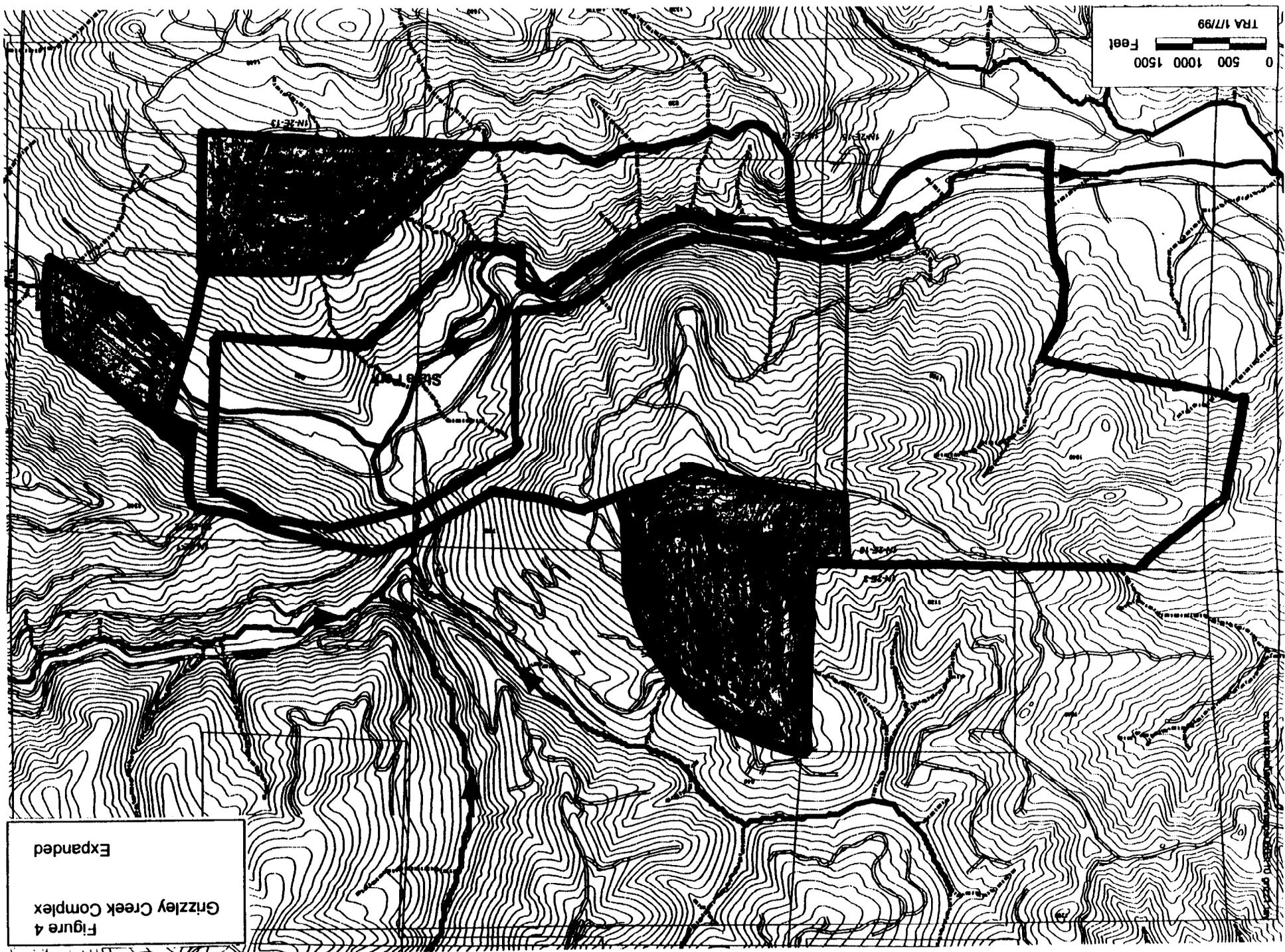


Figure 3  
OWL Creek  
Murrelet  
Conservation  
Area  
Expanded





Expanded  
Grizzly Creek Complex  
Figure 4

TRA 1/7/99  
0 500 1000 1500  
Feet

- MMCAs, formal land surveys will be conducted to establish boundaries prior to harvest.
- **Buffers** around old-growth habitat are applied to reduce the potential for access by avian predators and ameliorating climatic effects. To provide these benefits, the timber stand within the **buffer** should provide a high degree of canopy closure at a height as close to that of the old-growth habitat as possible. In some cases, where intervening features such as ridgelines and roads would substantially reduce the effectiveness of **buffers**, vegetated buffers may not be deemed necessary. Where the benefits of **buffers** could be attained using PALCO-owned property, the MMCAs were designed with **300-foot buffers** incorporated within their boundaries. However in several instances, additional **buffers** are or may be appropriate. These additional instances are described in the following three bullets.
- Additional **300-foot** buffers will be established at certain points along the south edge of the Headwaters Reserve and the northwest edge of the North Fork Elk MMCA. These **buffers** are identified in Figures 2 and 3.
- If **PALCO** acquires property bordering an MMCA, **300-foot, no-harvest buffers shall** be established adjacent to the MMCA immediately, wherever residual or old-growth forest exists at the margin of the MMCA.
- Activities within the **300-foot buffers** shall be restricted to those identified in Section 6.1.2.2.
- During the review of boundaries described in the fourth bullet above, the mapped **buffers will** be examined to ensure that they meet the objectives of protection of MMCA values to the maximum extent feasible and to consider whether additional buffers should be added to meet the objectives. In addition to the need for species protection, this process will fully consider limitations of effectiveness due to intervening features and the practicality of delineation (for instance, use of existing features such as roads and ridges versus establishing boundaries by performing land surveys).

#### 6.1.2.2 Activities in MMCAs

##### 6.1.2.2.1 Management in the MMCAs

Management shall be consistent with the goals and objectives of the MMCAs and, except as expressly provided here, shall be conducted in consultation with the USFWS and CDFG. The goals and objectives of the MMCAs are as follows:

- Prohibit timber harvesting, including salvage logging and other management activities detrimental to the marbled murrelet or marbled murrelet habitat within any area designated as an MMCA. Consistent with this prohibition, PALCO will only engage in MMCA conservation activities, as identified in Section 6.1.2.2.2 and other management activities identified in Section 6.1.2.2.1.
- Maintain the value of currently suitable marbled murrelet nesting habitat in the **MMCAs**.
- Recruit suitable marbled murrelet nesting habitat in old-growth residual stands in the MMCAs.
- Provide **buffering** for, and contiguity of, suitable and recruitment nesting habitat in young-growth stands within the MMCAs.

#### 6.1.2.2.2 MMCA Timber Removal

PALCO is not required to undertake any such management in the MMCAs.

- **Old-growth** stand components within MMCAs are to be dedicated to retention and enhancement of murrelet nesting habitat values.
- **Residual** stand components are to be managed to recruit functional murrelet nesting habitat.
- **Second-growth** stand components within and outside of residuals are to be managed to **buffer** old-growth and residual habitat and to provide mature forest contiguity throughout MMCAs. Any thinning allowed in the MMCAs would be done within second-growth to accelerate recruitment of second-growth trees into a mature condition that **buffers** residual and old-growth canopy structure. Any permitted thinning shall occur outside of the murrelet nesting season and without the construction or reconstruction of roads. No helicopter yarding shall be conducted.
- With the exception of those activities identified as MMCA conservation activities in this section, any activity involving the removal of timber from an MMCA, including pre-commercial and commercial thinning, shall be allowed only on a case-by-case basis and only if the wildlife agencies determine that the specific activity will be beneficial to the marbled murrelet and its habitat and is in conformance with the Aquatics Conservation Plan. Such timber removal activities will be allowed only at the specific written request and/or written approval of the wildlife agencies in advance of such activity, following compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including NEPA and CEQA. Such compliance shall include determining whether the environmental documentation in existence at that time adequately discloses the impacts of the proposed activity to ensure compliance with NEPA and CEQA.

#### 6.1.2.2.3 MMCA Conservation Activities

Certain activities, roads, and other facilities within the MMCAs on **PALCO's** lands will remain available for use, consistent with the Aquatics Conservation Plan and the IA regarding this Plan and subject to the conditions below. These activities are deemed to be compatible with, or beneficial to, protection of the marbled murrelet and other covered species and their habitats within the MMCAs:

- Active roads within MMCAs may be used, maintained, stormproofed, upgraded, closed, or decommissioned as limited by Section 3.1.1(a)(1) of the IA.
- Properly licensed and permitted game hunting- including firearm discharge- may continue, during the appropriate seasons, from September 16 of each year through March 23 to avoid potential disturbance to nesting murrelets.
- Maintaining, stormproofing, upgrading, closing, or decommissioning, and using of existing roads and facilities **can** require the removal of trees. To the extent feasible, such activities with potential for disturbance shall be conducted outside the marbled murrelet breeding season. All trees removed within the **RMZ** or Mocking a road will be left in the vicinity of their removal. See the IA, Section 3.1.1(a)(1) and (5).
- Fuel removal will be allowed only in residual and second-growth buffers and will require consultation and written concurrence from USFWS and **CDFG**.

- Fire suppression will be allowed as otherwise provided in a fire management plan for the **MMCA**s approved by the wildlife agencies within one year of the effective date of this Plan.
- Tree removal necessary for road maintenance, stormproofing, upgrading, closure, or decommissioning shall be kept to a minimum. Downed, wind-thrown, and hazard trees within the **RMZ** must be retained as required by the terms of the Aquatics Species Conservation Plan.
- Stream enhancement projects in the **MMCA**s may be undertaken with prior written concurrence of USFWS and CDFG.
- The borrow pits and rock material sources within the **MMCA**s may be developed and operated during the **first** five years of the Plan. During this five-year period, material can be used for roads, drainage, maintenance, and repair, without consultation with or concurrence **from** USFWS and CDFG so long as no trees greater than 12 inches dbh are removed from said locations, and no single new borrow pit area greater than 2 acres is cleared, with a maximum limit of no more than two new sites in any MMCA. A maximum of four acres may be cleared in connection with existing or new borrow pits within each MMCA for the life of the permit. Any borrow pit site tree removal or land clearance in excess of these limits from and after the effective date of this permit will require consultation with and concurrence by USFWS and CDFG and full compliance with applicable federal and state laws including NEPA and CEQA. Borrow pits are covered activities under the **ITPs** for a five-year period from the date the **ITPs** are issued. Inclusion of borrow pits as a covered activity under the **ITPs** after the five-year period will require an amendment to the permit.
- Scientific surveys and studies may be undertaken as part of the Plan's monitoring program.
- One of **PALCO**'s permitted hard rock quarries, Quarry 1, **Road 24**, is located within the Allen Creek MMCA. The **specific** location, environmental setting, permit provisions, mitigations, certified environmental documentation, and approved reclamation plan for this permitted and active quarry are included in the July 1998 Draft HCP. Quarry 1/Road 24 is located in the Yager Creek drainage, approximately five miles upstream from Carlotta, California. While quarrying operations typically involve excavation, drilling, blasting, screening, loading, and related activities throughout the year, in recognition of the potential for disturbance effects upon murrelets in the Allen Creek MMCA, **PALCO** will limit all blasting to the period **after** September 15 and prior to March 24 of each year. To the maximum extent feasible, **PALCO** will also implement measures to mitigate disturbance impacts at other times of the year. These measures will include the CDFG recommendations for this quarry operation during the environmental review and permitting process. These measures are as follows:
  - The loading of smaller aggregate into empty trucks prior to large rock, to lessen the impact of large rock
  - The noise generated by the back gate striking the body of the dump truck should be mitigated by one of several methods: (1) pulling away from the dump site slowly, (2) padding the area between the gate and the body, or (3) removing the back gate from the body of the truck.

- The Allen Creek MMCA rock quarry is included in the permit as a covered activity under the **ITPs** for two years **from** the date of permit issuance. Inclusion of the quarry as a covered activity beyond the two-year period will require an amendment to the **ITPs**.

### 6.1.2.3 Minimization of lake of Marbled **Murrelets**

#### 6.1.2.3.1 Buffer Zones

Establish 0.25 mile seasonal buffers and **300-foot buffers** with **PALCO's** late seral silvicultural prescription (240 square-foot-per-acre conifer basal area following harvest) on PALCO lands bordering old-growth marbled murrelet habitat on public lands.

- Consultation with agencies completed on any harvest, thinning, or salvage activities
- Consultation with agencies completed on road maintenance or **stormproofing**
- Fuel treatments consistent with MMCA **fire** management plan
- Down or felled trees in **MMCA** retained per aquatic strategy
- Consultation with agencies completed on stream restoration projects
- Consultation with agencies completed on opening or operation of quarries and rock borrow pits
- Seasonal restriction applied within 0.25 mile of parks and reserves
- Late seral prescription applied within 300 feet of parks and reserves

#### 6.1.2.3.2 Disturbance Minimization

The Fish and Wildlife Service, CDFG and PALCO shall review all activities proposed within MMCAs, within 0.25 mile of MMCAs, within 0.25 mile of old-growth habitat in parks and acquired reserves, and within 0.25 mile of other occupied stands to ensure that disturbance of murrelets in MMCAs has been minimized to the greatest extent feasible. Such measures may include, but will not be limited to, time-of-day restrictions, seasonal restrictions, and distance setbacks. This process will include recognition of and coordination with other HCP resource management objectives, especially aquatic protections. A checklist will be established for documentation, and it will be included **with THPs** and also completed for other management actions. Checklist elements will include, but will not be limited to, the following:

- Consultation with agencies completed on any harvest, thinning, or salvage activities
- Consultation with agencies completed on road maintenance or stormproofing
- Fuel treatments consistent with MMCA fire management plan
- Down or felled trees in MMCA retained per aquatic strategy
- Consultation with agencies completed on stream restoration projects
- Consultation with agencies completed on opening or operation of quarries and rock borrow pits
- Seasonal restriction applied within 0.25 mile of parks and reserves
- Late seral prescription applied within 300 feet of parks and reserves

#### 6.1.2.3.3 Habitat Rating Evaluation Process

PALCO shall conduct a habitat rating evaluation process that applies to all stands of old-growth redwood habitat suitable for marbled murrelet nesting, including uncut old growth and residual

old growth, which are authorized for harvest, but have not been surveyed to protocol. Stands that have been determined to be occupied, or determined by protocol surveys not to be occupied, are not subject to this process.

The rating evaluation process for the residual and unentered old-growth stands described above **shall** include factors such as proximity to occupied stands, canopy closure, stems per acre, volume per acre, and stand size. Field measurements and **onsite** surveys are not required in this process. The rating process will divide those stands into two groups that are equal or nearly equal in acreage: a “higher quality” habitat group and a lower **quality** habitat group. The group with lower habitat quality rating may be harvested without other restrictions relating to murrelets, except for inclusion in the take **minimization** measures described in Sections 6.1.2.3.1 and 6.1.2.3.2 above. Along with the occupied stands, the group with the higher habitat rating will be subject to the take minimization processes described in Sections 6.1.2.3.1 and 6.1.2.3.2 above and Section 6.1.2.3.4 below, and in the phasing process described in Section 6.1.2.3.5 below.

#### 6.1.2.3.4 Seasonal Restrictions

To minimize take of nesting murrelets, eggs, and young in the old-growth redwood timber stands rated as higher habitat **quality** in Section 6.1.2.3.3 above, and in the stands of old-growth redwood timber known and documented to be occupied by murrelets at the time of ITP issuance, and which are authorized for harvest, the following restrictions apply:

- Operations associated with falling (road construction, marking, layout construction, and falling) will occur outside the breeding season.
- Operations associated with log removal (e.g., yarding, loading, and hauling) may take place at any time, except as follows:
  - Within 0.25 mile of MMCAs or other occupied habitat (and thus subject to review under the process provided in Section 6.1.2.3.2 above)
  - As restricted by other HCP measures
  - Where restricted by other laws or regulations
  - Unsurveyed old-growth redwood stands in the lower quality habitat group are not subject to the seasonal restrictions in this section, except as provided in Sections 6.1.2.3.1 and 6.1.2.3.2

#### 6.1.2.3.5 Prioritization and Phasing of Harvest

For old-growth and residual redwood authorized for harvest, including the higher quality habitat group rated in the process described in 6.1.2.3.3 above, conduct a prioritization process for harvest. The prioritization process and harvest phasing will not apply to the lower quality habitat group of unsurveyed habitat provided in accordance with 6.1.2.3.3 above. Overlay other constraints (e.g., inner gorge, mass wasting, etc.) to identify acreage tentatively available for harvest in the short term. To this available acreage, apply prioritization of murrelet habitat, using factors such as prior survey results, proximity to MMCAs and other occupied habitat, canopy closure, stems per acre, volume per acre, and stand size.

The USFWS, CDFG, and PALCO will work cooperatively to schedule harvest of old-growth redwood and residual old growth redwood outside the MMCAs in a manner which minimizes impacts to marbled murrelets while recognizing PALCO’s operational needs. PALCO shall work cooperatively with the wildlife agencies to schedule and conduct old-growth redwood timber harvest so as to prioritize entry of the lower quality habitat group over timber stands of

the higher quality habitat group, to the extent practicable given other required constraints of the HCP and **ITPs**, while giving consideration to **PALCO's** operational needs. Constraints which overlay prioritization and must be considered include, but are not limited to, timber volumes and acreages unavailable for harvest due to mass wasting or other geologic concern, hillslope steepness or stability limitations, disturbance index, riparian management, channel migration zone, and related restrictions.

### 6.1.3 Monitoring

The Company will implement the implementation and effectiveness monitoring program discussed in Section 6 on the covered lands. The goals will be as follows:

1. Determine whether the HCP conservation strategies are implemented as written.
2. Determine whether the conservation strategies are having the predicted impact and effect on marbled **murrelets**.

These two monitoring goals can be regarded as implementation (or compliance) monitoring and effectiveness monitoring, respectively. These goals follow from the recommendations of the USFWS (Recovery Plan) and mirror similar efforts elsewhere in the region (e.g., Madsen et al. 1997, for federal lands).

Implementation and monitoring will be carried out by the wildlife agencies, in part through the HCP monitor, as described in Section 6.13. The wildlife agencies and the monitor will have full access to **PALCO's** land, at all times, to inspect any covered activity, and who shall be present **onsite** during every timber harvest conducted by or on behalf of **PALCO**. Implementation monitoring will also document the types, amounts, and locations of forest management activities carried out within the HCP **planning** area. These monitoring activities may take the form of periodic reports on landscape-level conditions assessed by using inventory and remote sensing information. For purposes of this routine compliance monitoring in which landscape changes over time are recorded. **PALCO** shall provide a report to USFWS and CDFG every five years, documenting (through aerial photography geographical information system [**GIS**] mapping, GPS reference points [where available], and other methods available and appropriate) status, changes, and trends in the MMCA areas. Items to be addressed in the report will include, but will not be limited to, the following:

- Depiction of the MMCA boundaries and indications of the location and scope of nearby harvest operations
- General description of any silvicultural activities undertaken in accordance with Section 3.1.1 of the IA with the advice and consent of USFWS and CDFG within the **MMCA**s and a record of the consultation, correspondence, planning, or other documentation associated with such activity
- Depiction, description, or other documentation, to the extent available, of any other consultation or correspondence between **PALCO** and **USFWS/CDFG** regarding any of the following:
  - Use, abandonment, or reclamation of permitted Rock Quarry No. 2/Road 24 located **within** the Allen Creek **MMCA**
  - Use or tree removal to facilitate borrow pit material sources within the **MMCA**s, as provided in this Plan

- Road use, maintenance, stormproofing, drainage repair, maintenance, or related tree removal for same as provided in this Plan
- Tree removal due to safety hazards

Effectiveness monitoring will seek to document changes in the marbled murrelet populations on PALCO lands and, to a lesser degree, on neighboring lands and waters and changes in the habitat of these populations on PALCO lands, as more particularly described below.

Effectiveness monitoring will be carried out by PALCO personnel, and/or by outside contractors, and by the wildlife agencies, in part through the HCP monitor. The program will be overseen by **PALCO's** existing Marbled Murrelet Scientific Review Panel (**MMSRP**). Members of the MMSRP will meet annually for the first five years of the plan to review monitoring program design and results and to make recommendations for future studies. All data and results will also be reported to USFWS and CDFG. Summaries of data and analyses will be presented quarterly. An annual report of all data and analyses will be presented in **February/March** of each year.

Prior to the design and implementation of any monitoring plan, PALCO will seek advice from statistical consultants on the most appropriate monitoring design. This advice will include explicit treatment of statistical power and the necessary effort required **to** determine whether effects have occurred. These preliminary studies will then be used to guide the monitoring program in consultation with the Scientific Review Panel, USFWS, and CDFG.

#### 6.1.3.1 Conservation Objectives Guiding Monitoring Efforts

Specific objectives of the conservation program that will guide the effectiveness monitoring process include the following:

- Maintain the value of currently suitable marbled murrelet nesting habitat in the MMCAS.
- Recruit suitable marbled murrelet nesting habitat in old-growth residual stands in the **MMCA**s.
- Provide **buffering** for, and **contiguity** of, suitable and recruitment nesting habitat in young-growth stands within the MMCAS.
- Minimize new development or activity which could disturb murrelet nesting in MMCAS.

#### 6.1.3.2 Research and Management Questions to be Addressed by Monitoring Efforts

Monitoring associated with the conservation objectives in this Plan is intended to respond to the following research and management questions:

- Are marbled murrelets continuing to use MMCA stands?
- What are the trends in local marbled murrelet populations?
- What are the condition and the distribution of habitat in the **MMCA**s and reserves?

#### 6.1.3.3 Use of MMCA Stands

Marbled murrelet surveys have previously been carried out in the MMCA's, in the Headwaters Reserve area, and in the Humboldt Redwoods State Park. PALCO will continue **to** monitor

mm-relets in the **MMCA**s to determine the continued occupancy of these stands and to gauge the levels of use in the stands. This will allow an assessment of the impact, if any, of management and conservation measures described in this Plan on the patterns of occupancy. At the same time, PALCO will cooperate with federal and state land management agencies to monitor MMCA use in the Headwaters Reserve and in the State Park. Areas within these stands **will** essentially serve as controls for any changes that occur in the MMCA

Surveys will be carried out by **staff** or contractors, according to the basic methods set out in the 1998 Pacific **Seabird** Group protocol. Results will be used to determine the number and type of **murrelet** detections. The overall goal of the monitoring program is to determine whether the MMCA

continue to be occupied. Essentially, the issue is whether the harvest of residual old growth and second growth outside of the MMCA

is having any detrimental effect on habitat **quality** within the MMCA

#### 6.1.3.4 Marbled **Murrelet** Population Trends

and, if so, to determine the relative impact of the effect on the species.

Five MMCA

will be monitored, with two survey areas in **Allen** Creek, and one each in Bell Lawrence, Shaw Gift, Cooper Mill, and **Grizzly** Creek. In addition, subject to permission and access, several control sites will be set up in the Headwaters Reserve (three areas) and in Humboldt Redwoods State Park (two areas). This constitutes a minimum of 11 survey areas, each surveyed multiple times annually. The surveys will be set up to ensure that there is adequate statistical power to compare MMCA and reserve stands. The surveys may depart from Pacific **Seabird** Group (**PSG**) protocol as needed to achieve maximum statistical power per effort.

A subsidiary goal of the survey program **will** be to refine existing knowledge of the relative density of mm-relets in different forest stands. Such refinement may allow the use of improved metrics of marbled mm-relet habitat use. Additional research or survey methods (radar, telemetry, etc.) may be used if appropriate. At this point, inland surveys are not, by themselves, thought to monitor marbled mm-relet numbers effectively enough to allow estimates of population trends (Madsen et al. 1997).

If, in the short term, population decline stabilizes, reverses, or continues at the present or lowered rates in the offshore population, this will indicate that the HCP has not adversely **affected** the population. If however the rate of decline increases, and such a decline is not matched elsewhere in northern California, the MMSRP will be consulted.

If offshore monitoring shows a substantial decrease in **productivity** from existing levels, this may suggest that the population is declining more rapidly than predicted under this HCP. The MMSRP will help interpret the available information. However, no land management adjustments are required or anticipated under this Plan pursuant to results or analyses of offshore census data.

The timing and placement of offshore surveys will inevitably be subject to varied effort, due to weather, ocean conditions, etc. To the extent practicable, PALCO will support surveys as guided by statistical power analysis and the advice of the MMSRP. **PALCO** will, to the extent practicable, ensure a minimum of three surveys annually on the waters offshore from the PALCO ownership.

#### 6.1.3.5 Condition and Distribution of Habitat in **MMCA**s and Reserves

Multiple plots will be set up within **MMCA**s and MMCA **buffers**. These will be sampled every five years for **the** following attributes:

- Platform density and type
- Residuals/acre
- Status of under-story
- Height
- dbh
- 

The size, number, and distribution of vegetation plots will be determined after an initial sampling period. These data will be used to perform statistical power analysis to determine the design of subsequent sampling efforts.

#### 6.1.3.6 Regional Marbled Murrelet Conservation Research

PALCO will establish a fund (separate from the process in 6.1.3.4 above) to conduct research regarding the conservation needs for the marbled murrelet. Funding will be applied according to recommendations of the MMSRP and the agencies, with the addition of one member of the Marbled Murrelet Recovery Team (**MMRT**) (**USFWS**, 1997). Funding may be applied to projects within marbled **murrelet** conservation zones 4 and 5. Funds will be provided at \$200,000 per year for the first five years and \$100,000 per year for the next five years.

#### 6.1.3.7 Effectiveness Monitoring Annual Report and Consultation

PALCO will provide USFWS and CDFG with an annual report (annual effectiveness monitoring report or reports) detailing the following:

- The monitoring survey locations, results, data, and analyses undertaken during the past year pursuant to this Plan
- Depictions, descriptions or discussions of any purpose, planning, or design documentation related to effectiveness monitoring anticipated for the coming year

No sooner than 30 days after submitting the annual effectiveness monitoring report, PALCO shall conduct a consultation meeting with USFWS and CDFG to discuss the report and the means, methods, techniques, or adjustments in the survey effort, data analyses, or result interpretations. This consultation shall be advisory only, with the goal of refining survey or analytical efforts to achieve the objectives and to answer the research and management questions described above.

Following the consultation meeting with USFWS and CDFG, for at least the first five years of the effective **term** of this Plan, PALCO shall convene a meeting of the **MMSRP** to obtain the panel's input and advice regarding effectiveness monitoring techniques, data management, analysis and interpretation, protocols, or other related material and information. PALCO shall give USFWS and CDFG at least 30 days' advance notice of the date, time, and place it will be convening the panel, provide USFWS and CDFG access and **opportunity** to participate, and prepare a summary and minutes of the proceedings.

#### 6.1.3.8 Implementation and Compliance

A PALCO THP Checklist **will** be used to confirm that all relevant elements of the OCP will be implemented and made enforceable under the **THPs**. This checklist **shall** be attached to each THP and will be reviewed during implementation monitoring. In addition, the HCP monitor (see Section 6.13) will be **onsite** on every harvest plan.

## 6.2 NORTHERN SPOTTED OWL CONSERVATION PLAN

This conservation strategy is a habitat-based approach. It includes the harvest, retention, and recruitment of requisite habitat types and elements within watershed assessment areas and individual activity sites. This approach will be complemented by procedures applied during covered activities to (1) minimize disturbance to northern spotted owl (**NSO**) activity sites, (2) monitor to determine whether these efforts maintain a high-density and productive population of **NSOs** on the ownership, and (3) apply adaptive management techniques when PALCO, the USFWS, CDFG, and the scientific community learn more about the biology of the NSO and/or assess how well management objectives are met. The NSO strategy will rely upon other conservation elements of the HCP for the retention and recruitment of potential foraging, roosting, and nesting habitat in watersheds across the ownership and through the HCP period. **Specifically**, the silvicultural requirements associated with **RMZs**, the mass wasting avoidance strategy, the cumulative **effects/disturbance** index restrictions, the **MMCA**s, and the retention standard of 10 percent late seral habitat for each watershed assessment area (**WAA**) are likely to provide habitat which **NSOs** may find suitable. At individual activity sites, the strategy provides specific habitat retention requirements to conserve habitat for foraging, roosting, and nesting.

The following definitions are used herein:

- Activity site- An activity site (or activity center) is the area including the primary roost tree of a non-nesting pair or single NSO, or the nest tree of a nesting pair. **The** most current NSO location shall be used to assess status. If the location is not defined by a nest tree, the primary roost tree shall be selected, based upon the area where the **NSOs** are most consistently located. Indicators such **as** regurgitated pellets, whitewash, etc., shall be used in **determining** the primary roost tree. The use status of the activity site must be confirmed by a daytime **followup** visit.

- **Pair-** Status will be determined if on two visits spaced at least one week apart before May 1, or one visit after May 1, a male and female are seen/heard within 0.25 mile of each other or (a) a male is observed taking a mouse to a female, (b) a female is observed on a nest, or (c) young are detected with an adult.
- **Nesting pair—** Status will be determined if on two visits spaced at least one week apart before May 1, or one visit after May 1, a male and female are seen/heard within 0.25 mile of each other on the same visit and any of the following occurs: (a) a female is observed on a nest, (b) either a male or female is observed delivering prey to a nest, (c) a female is observed with a brood patch @id-April to mid-June), or (d) young are detected with an adult.
- **Reproductive rate (i.e., nesting success)—** Reproductive rate is calculated annually by dividing the total number of fledglings observed by the total number of NSO pairs monitored to determine reproductive output.
- **Suitable NSO habitat-** For purposes of characterizing foraging, roosting, and nesting. Table 6 must be used (also refer to adaptive management measure 2).

### 6.2.1 Management Objectives

The following are the management objectives for the NSO OCP. The methods for determining the parameters are detailed in subsequent sections.

1. Maintain a minimum of 108 activity sites each year over the life of the HCP.
2. Maintain NSO pairs on an average of 80 percent (over a five-year period) of the activity sites on the ownership.
3. Maintain an average reproductive rate of at least 0.61 fledged young per pair.
4. During the first five years of the HCP, maintain and document the minimum number of activity sites shown in Table 7.

### 6.2.2 Conservation Measures

1. PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG shall establish an NSO **Scientific** Review Panel (NSOSRP), in the same manner as identified for the **Grizzley** Creek Panel in 3.1.2 of the IA. This panel shall review and make recommendations for monitoring techniques, offer expert review of monitoring results, and make recommendations to PALCO on habitat retention standards for maintenance and recruitment of NSO activity sites. This same panel shall provide expert review and recommendations for implementation of the marbled murrelet conservation measures. This panel shall be convened, at a minimum, in years 1, 6, and 11 following issuance of the ITP.
2. PALCO shall conduct complete annual censuses to monitor all activity sites on the ownership and to determine numbers of pairs, nesting pairs, and reproductive rates. PALCO may use a sampling methodology, rather than a complete census, provided that the sampling proposal has been reviewed by the NSOSRP and approved by USFWS and CDFG. Monitoring data shall be provided annually to the NSOSRP, the USFWS, and CDFG.
3. Surveys

- For active operations which are initiated prior **to** the onset of the breeding season (March 1), the **THP** area and a **1,000-foot** buffer will be surveyed, with one visit between March 1 and March 15, or later if necessary. Two additional surveys, at least one week apart will be performed between March 15 and August 31.
- For new operations initiated between March 1 and August 31, the THP area and a **1,000-foot** buffer shall be surveyed. Three survey visits, each separated by at least one week, shall occur prior **to** the start of operations, but **after** March 1.

**Table 6. Wildlife Habitat Relationship (WHR) Habitat Type and Use by Northern Spotted Owls**

WHR	3P	3M	3D	4S	4P	4M	4D	5S	5P	5M	5D	6
MHW		LF	LF	LF	MF	LR	MR	HF	LR	HN	HN	HN
MHC		LF	LF	LF	MF	LR	LR	HF	LR	MN	HN	HN
DFR	LF	MF	HP	LF	MF	MR	MN	MF	LR	HN	HN	HN
RWD	LF	MF	MF	LF	LF	LR	MN	HF	LN	MN	HN	HN

Use: L = low; M = medium; H = high; F = foraging; R = roosting; N = nesting; MHW = montane hardwood; MHC = montane hardwood-conifer. DFR = Douglas-fir, RWD = Redwood  
 Size Class-3 = poletree 6 to 11 inches dbh; 4 = small tree 11 to 24 inches dbh; 5 = medium/large tree more than 24 inches dbh; 6 = multi-layered habitat  
 Canopy Closure-D = dense cover 60 to 100%, M = moderate cover 40 to 59%, P = open cover 25 to 39%

**Table 7. Management Thresholds for Northern Spotted Owl Activity Sites**

Years After Permit Issuance	Minimum Number of Activity Sites
1	145
2	135
3	125
4	115
5+	108

- When **NSOs** are contacted on the surveys, a daytime **followup** will be conducted as soon as possible to determine nesting status (also see the definition of nesting pair). If **NSOs** are detected within areas where management activities will occur, operations shall cease until status is determined.
  - Once nesting status has been determined, the following three conservation measures (4, 5, and 6) shall be implemented.
4. Before June 1 each year, PALCO shall select and identify to USFWS and CDFG at least 80 activity sites which shall be maintained using the following habitat retention guidelines (referred to as Level One habitat retention). Activity sites selected for Level One habitat retention must have supported **NSOs** in the previous

year and must also be active for the year in which the site is selected. PALCO may select any 80 activity sites which meet Level One habitat retention standards. Selection of a site in one year does not imply that the site must be maintained in subsequent years.

- For activity sites where the NSO status has been determined to be nesting, or until a wildlife biologist determines that nesting has failed, or that young can avoid direct impacts of timber harvest (e.g., young are capable of sustained flight or can take live prey independently), no harvesting shall occur during the breeding season (March 1 through August 31) within a **1,000-foot** radius of the nest tree.
  - The characteristics of suitable nesting habitat, if present, must be maintained within **500** feet of the **activity** center. No timber operations, including salvage, shall be conducted in this area during the breeding season unless approved by the USFWS and CDFG. Timber operations may be conducted in this area outside the breeding season if appropriate measures are adopted to protect suitable nesting habitat.
  - Within 500 to 1,000 feet of the activity center, **sufficient** suitable characteristics, if present, must be retained to support roosting and to provide protection **from** predation and storms.
  - Five-hundred acres of suitable NSO habitat must be provided, if present, within 0.7 mile of the activity center. Less than 50 percent of the retained habitat shall be under operation in any one year. If less than 500 acres of suitable NSO habitat is present, the acreage shall not be reduced. The 500 acres includes the habitat retained in the first two hyphenated items above and should be as contiguous as possible.
  - On thousand thirty-six total acres of suitable NSO habitat must be provided, if present, **within** 1.3 miles of each activity site. If less than 1,336 acres of suitable NSO habitat is present, the acreage shall not be reduced.
  - The shape of the areas established for habitat retention objectives shall be adjusted to conform to natural landscape attributes such as draws and stream courses, while retaining the total area required.
5. At activity sites which have not been designated for Level One protection, PALCO shall apply Level Two protection measures as follows:
- For activity sites where the NSO status has been determined to be nesting; or until a wildlife biologist determines that nesting has failed, or that young are capable of avoiding direct impacts of timber harvest (e.g., young are capable of sustained flight or can take prey independently), no harvesting shall occur during the breeding season (March 1 through August 31) within a **1,000-foot** radius of the nest tree.
  - Following the breeding season, 18 acres around the activity site shall be maintained as suitable nesting habitat, if present. The protected 18 acres **shall conform** to natural landscape features, as designated by PALCO's wildlife biologist, and the **buffer** protecting the activity site must be at least 400 feet wide.
  - **For activity** sites which have been determined to be occupied by a non-siting pair or single NSO, 18 acres around the activity **site** shall be

maintained as suitable nesting habitat, if present. The protected 18 acres shall conform to natural landscape features, as designated by PALCO's **wildlife** biologist, and the **buffer** protecting the activity site must be at least 400 feet wide. At PALCO's discretion harvesting may occur during the breeding season, in the area adjoining the **18-acre** habitat retention area.

6. Activity sites which are not needed to meet management objectives 1 or 4 shall receive a **1,000-foot** buffer during the breeding season. Timber associated with these activity sites may be harvested before March 1 or after August 31. All nest trees shall be marked by PALCO's wildlife biologist and shall be retained if the activity site is harvested.

### 6.2.3 Adaptive Management

1. PALCO is encouraged to conduct research to identify alternative activity site retention models for long-term management through the permit period. After five years, or at **any** later date during the permit period, PALCO may present alternative activity site retention models for review by the NSOSRP to substitute for conservation measures 4 and 5. Alternative activity site retention models shall not be implemented until they have been reviewed and approved by the USFWS and CDFG. PALCO may use these models to manage for recruitment of suitable habitat and potential establishment of new activity sites.
2. PALCO, USFWS, or CDFG may at any time propose modifications to the characterizations of NSO suitable habitat provided in the definition of suitable NSO habitat on page P-21 (Table 6). Proposals shall be validated against any relevant data including that collected in the performance of conservation measure 2. The NSOSRP shall review applicable information and provide a recommendation to PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG who shall mutually agree upon any **modifications**.
3. Management objectives may be modified if new information becomes available following review of the NSOSRP recommendations and approval by USFWS and CDFG.
4. The seasonal bounds and duration of the prohibition on harvesting adjacent to activity sites may be modified based upon specific ownership information provided at **PALCO's** discretion upon review by the NSOSRP and approval by USFWS and CDFG.
5. The actual or estimated number of activity sites shall remain at or above management objectives 1 and 4 (Table 7) for each year of the HCP. If the applicable management objective is not achieved for any year of Plan operations, or if, for any reason PALCO is unable to accomplish conservation measure 4, PALCO shall convene the NSOSRP for a joint meeting with USFWS and CDFG to review potential reasons why the objectives are not being met and implement no-take management procedures. No-take management shall be implemented until the specific management objective or conservation measure is achieved.
6. Proportions of activity sites occupied by pairs and reproductive rates shall be averaged over running five-year periods. If the five-year average for either parameter does not meet the management objective, PALCO shall convene the NSOSRP for a joint meeting with USFWS and CDFG to review potential reasons

why the objectives are not being met and to determine potential corrective measures to implement. Following this consultation, PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG shall jointly develop modifications for the conservation measures in Section 6.2.2. Any modifications shall be consistent with issuance criteria for (10(a)(1)(B) of the FESA and the CESA.

7. Management objective 1 and conservation measure 4 may be modified commensurate with changes in ownership size following review by the NSOSRP and approval by USFWS and CDFG. Modifications based upon ownership size and the scope of incidental take coverage extended by USFWS and CDFG may be proposed either by PALCO or the wildlife agencies.

## 6.3 AQUATICS CONSERVATION PLAN

### 6.3.1 Management Objective

The goal of the aquatics conservation plan is to maintain or achieve, over time, a properly functioning aquatic habitat condition. This condition, as defined by NMFS, is essential for the long-term survival of anadromous salmonids and is identified in a matrix with habitat variables necessary to achieve this goal. Not all variables will be attainable over the life of the Plan, regardless of **PALCO's** effort. Specifically, this includes the recruitment of large wood onto the forest floor and into the watercourses. For this reason, and because habitat conditions are not static, the **specific** habitat variables are not enforceable standards under the Plan. The attainment of the conservation goal is the cornerstone of the entire Aquatics Conservation Plan.

The key variables are water temperature, canopy cover, sediment, **instream** large wood, large wood recruitment, pool frequency, and pool quality. Refer to the July 1998 Draft HCP, Volume **IV**, Part D, Section 6, for the quantitative and qualitative targets for each variable and to Table 8 for a summary.

Table 8. Projected Forest Seral Types in Class I **WLPZs** by Decade for the Plan Period (acres)

Seral Type	Decade												
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Non-timber	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018	1,018
Prairie	96	96	96	96	96	96	96	96	96	96	96	96	96
Forest Opening	294	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	1	1	<b>1</b>	32	5	13	1	1	<b>1</b>
Hardwood	230	147	31	17	57	57	<b>60</b>	58	<b>60</b>	172	187	202	200
Young Forest	1,375	1,858	1,225	399	124	60	103	70	259	272	80	19	9
Mid-successional	4,433	4,503	4,983	5,750	5,451	5,240	4,390	3,359	2,417	2,384	2,100	2,167	2,434
Late Seral	3,133	3,064	3,435	3,520	4,069	4,355	5,158	6,194	6,972	6,871	7,344	7,324	7,069
Old Growth	505	398	296	285	268	258	258	258	258	258	258	258	258
Total	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085	11,085

## 6.3.2 Watershed Analysis

### 6.3.2.1 Process

1. Watershed analysis is required for all covered lands in the HCP.
2. Within 60 days of the effective date, PALCO, in consultation with the wildlife agencies, shall establish a schedule that results in completion of the initial watershed analysis processes for all covered lands within five years of the issuance of the ITP.
3. A modified version of *the Washington Forest Practices Board Manual: Standard Methodology for Conducting Watershed Analysis - Version 4.0*, November 1997 (WDNR methodology) process or a **modified** version of the most current WDNR methodology shall be used. The process shall include an assessment, synthesis (with a cumulative effects assessment), prescription development, monitoring, and **revisitation**.
4. Variations on the methodology and modules will be approved by **NMFS** and **USFWS**, in consultation with state agencies. PALCO may also recommend variations.
5. **The** assessment modules from the WDNR methodology that will be used, in a modified format, include mass wasting, **surface** erosion, riparian function, fish habitat, and stream channel assessment. The Pacific Watershed Associates (**PWA**) sediment source assessment methodology (July 1998 Draft HCP, Volume II, Part 0, with Attachments), with additions for non-road-related surface erosion, may be used in place of the surface erosion module. Water quality critical and key questions may also be incorporated **into** the assessment.
6. Key and critical (as used in the WDNR methodology) questions for use in the modules will be customized for HCP covered species and **PALCO's** ownership.
7. A distinct cumulative effects assessment is a required variation of the watershed analysis process. The new process used during watershed analysis shall include, but is not limited to, the information **which** has been developed as part of the disturbance index assessments done prior to completion of the watershed analysis.
8. An amphibian and reptile assessment module shall be developed which includes key and critical questions regarding life history requirements, including those **upslope** of the RMZ boundaries. This module will be used as part of every watershed analysis. Results from this module shall be integrated into synthesis and prescription development to minimize and mitigate management effects on all phases of life history.
9. The area analyzed shall be watershed(s) of approximately 10,000 to 50,000 acres, as delineated by the wildlife agencies and PALCO, and approved by the wildlife agencies. These analysis areas will be similar to the size of several planning watersheds or single hydrologic unit.
10. The entire watersheds/analysis areas where PALCO owns all or portions of the land will be assessed. A Level 2 assessment (**as** described by the WDNR methodology) is required for **all** lands PALCO owns in specified **watersheds/analysis** areas at the

time of the analysis. A Level 1 assessment is required for lands not owned by PALCO at the time of the analysis.

11. The analysis will be performed by an interdisciplinary team of qualified scientists and technical **staff**.
12. At least one representative **from** PALCO and each of the **wildlife** agencies will serve on the analysis teams. If available, a representative from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the **California** Department of Conservation will also serve on the analysis teams. The North Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board and CDF may also participate on the teams.
13. **The wildlife** agencies shall review each watershed analysis upon its completion.
14. Timelines for completion of the individual components according to the WDNR methodology are not required. However, timelines for completion of these various components of the analysis will be developed based on mutual agreement between PALCO and the **wildlife** agencies on an individual watershed analysis basis.
15. The watershed analysis process shall be open for public comment. PALCO will present the public with an account of what the company will be doing with respect to each watershed analysis. The goal of this interaction is to obtain public input on problems and priorities. Members of the public who have been technically trained may also participate in the technical analysis. On completion of each watershed analysis, PALCO will also present the results of the watershed analysis and **justifications** of methodologies and prescriptions.

#### 6.3.2.2 Post-watershed Analysis Prescriptions

1. Site-specific prescriptions **resulting** from a watershed analysis must always be designed to achieve, over time, or maintain a properly functioning aquatic habitat condition (i.e., essential habitat elements), as defined by NMFS consistent with the limitations described in Section 6.3.1.
2. Watershed analysis may modify the following elements of the Aquatics Conservation Plan: hillslope management prescriptions; channel migration zone prescriptions; Class I, Class II, and Class III RMZ prescriptions; the disturbance index; and monitoring.
3. The wildlife agencies shall establish the site-specific prescriptions for implementation upon the completion of each watershed analysis.
4. PALCO shall implement the site-specific prescriptions established by the wildlife agencies.
5. If the wildlife agencies establish site-specific prescriptions that differ from prescriptions proposed in the watershed analysis, the agency shall state its reasons for doing so in writing.
6. The maximum and minimum limits for post-analysis prescriptions, as described below, set forth the range in which prescriptions may be modified for the Class I and II RMZs.

7. The post-analysis, minimum RMZ limits include the following:
  - RMZ prescriptions for both Class I and II waters shall be no less than 30-foot, no-harvest zones (slope measurements) on each side of the waters.
  - The **Class II RMZ** minimum **30-foot**, no-harvest zone (slope measurement) may be adjusted to a minimum 10 foot, no-harvest zone if NMFS or USFWS determines that this adjustment will benefit aquatic habitat or species.
  - For Class I **RMZs**, if the initial watershed **analysis** or subsequent revisitations allows for harvest entry into the **30- to 100-foot** zone, then the 18 largest conifer trees per acre shall be retained on each side of the waters per each harvest entry (i.e., the largest 18 trees preharvest shall be retained at the end of each harvest). The largest trees per acre in the minimum **30-foot**, no-harvest zone can be counted towards the total 18 trees per acre. If larger trees exist in the **100- to 170-foot** zone than in the **0- to 100-foot** zone, then trees in the **100- to 170-foot** zone shall make up **all** or a portion of the 18 large trees per acre on each side of the waters for that specific entry.
  - For the Class I and II **RMZs**, exclusive of the 18 largest trees per acre on each side of the waters, any additional trees left for retention shall include those with the highest probability of recruitment to waters.
  - **FPRs** in effect at the time of post-watershed analysis prescription development apply to all other areas. At no time shall the prescriptions be less than those required under the **FPRs**.
8. The post-analysis maximum **RMZ** limits include the following:
  - **RMZ** prescriptions for Class I and II waters **shall** be no-harvest zones that do not exceed 170 feet (horizontal measurement) on each side of the waters.
  - **The RMZ** minimum and maximum limits, as described above, will be taken into consideration during synthesis and prescription development.
9. The habitat requirements and HCP minimization and mitigation measures for the **red tree vole**, NSO, Pacific fisher, and **other** affected terrestrial covered species shall **be** taken into consideration during synthesis and prescription development. Proposed **post-watershed analysis** prescriptions **with** the potential to negatively impact habitat or minimization and mitigation measures for these species shall be reviewed to ensure that such prescriptions are consistent with **the** management objective(s) and conservation measures identified in **the** specific conservation **plan** for each such species.
10. Prescriptions developed as a result of watershed analysis cannot be extrapolated to other watersheds.

#### 6.3.2.3 Peer Review, Monitoring, and Revisitation

1. **NMFS** and **USFWS**, in consultation with **CDF**, the North Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board (**NCRWQCB**) and **CDFG**, shall establish a peer review process to evaluate, on a spot-check basis, the appropriateness of completed analysis and prescriptions that are developed through the watershed analysis process prior to the completion of the **first** watershed analysis. See Section **3.3.3.1(j)** of the **IA**.
2. A peer review in accordance with the process established in Section **3.1.3.1(a)** through **(f)** and **(k)** of the **IA** may be requested if any **PALCO** or wildlife agency member of the watershed analysis team disagrees with one or more of the prescriptions recommended by the analysis team.

3. Monitoring objectives and hypotheses will be derived from the watershed analysis to assess the effectiveness of prescriptions and trends in achieving a properly functioning aquatic habitat condition. Refer to aquatics effectiveness and trend monitoring Sections 6.3.5.2 and 6.3.5.3.
4. PALCO and the wildlife agencies will review completed watershed analyses at **five**-year intervals to determine whether prescriptions are adequate. This review includes, but is not limited to, determinations as to whether new science has developed that might influence prescriptions, the response of the watershed to prescriptions already implemented (monitoring), and whether watershed conditions have changed. The results may include revision of the prescriptions as part of adaptive management or conducting additional analyses which may also trigger prescription modifications.
5. Any proposed prescription modification(s) resulting from a **revisitation** shall be subject to the same process as the initial analysis. This process includes NMFS and USFWS establishment of prescriptions to be implemented, maximum and minimum limits, peer review, etc.
6. Additional terms regarding watershed analysis are contained in the **IA**, Section 3.1.3.1.

### 6.3.3 Control of Sediment from Roads and Other Sources

#### 6.3.3.1 Sediment Assessment

1. PALCO will assess the existing road network and associated sediment sources on its lands either within five years as part of watershed analysis or within five years of the planned **stormproofing**. Inventories will be updated within five years of the actual stormproofing. **The** road assessments will be conducted according to Pacific Watershed Associates protocols (July 1998 Draft HCP, Volume II, Part 0, with Attachments). The assessments must be completed in the following order:
  - Elk River, Freshwater Creek, Lawrence Creek, Yager Creek (including Lower, North Fork, Middle, and South Fork), Van **Duzen** River, Middle Fork Eel River, **Larabee/Sequoia** Creek, Mattole River, Salmon Creek, Bear River.
2. Adjustments to the priority list above shall be made in consultation with the wildlife agencies.
3. All high and medium **priority** sites will be stormproofed within five years of completion of the assessments, and all stormproofing will be completed within 20 years of the effective date.

#### 6.3.3.2 Road/Landing Stormproofing

Roads and landings will be stormproofed to the standards **identified** in Weaver and Hagans (1994) **within** the first 20 years of the Plan, at a minimum rate of 750 miles per decade and 75 miles per year. **Stormproofing** conducted as part of **THPs** will count towards the yearly and per-decade totals. Stormproofing completed to the standards identified in Weaver and Hagans (1994) prior to issuance of the ITP will also count towards the **first** decade totals. Roads and landings that are closed or decommissioned according to the standards in Weaver and Hagans (1994) are also considered stormproofed and can be counted towards the yearly and per-decade

totals. When used in this Plan, the term **stormproofing** describes a process which involves the following elements:

1. The assessments follow the Pacific Watershed Associates protocols (July 1998 Draft HCP, Volume II, Part 0, with Attachments). Generally, a trained observer walks a road segment looking for actual or potential occurrences of erosion, slippage, mass wasting, blocked or perched culverts, or other sediment sources. The assessment documents instances of Humboldt crossings, unstable fill slopes for roads and landings, water crossings that have a moderate to high potential for culvert blockage and/or diversion of stream flows onto the road bed, **sufficient** drainage, and diversions of road drainage directly into the waters.
2. The likelihood that each identified feature will deliver sediment **to** waters is also evaluated as part of the road and landing assessment, as is total volume of sediment that could be prevented from delivery whether or not remedial action is taken.
3. Based on the volume of sediment saved and likelihood of delivery, sites are assigned a high, medium, or low priority.
4. All high- and medium-priority sites are scheduled for corrective action. Corrective action typically requires an excavator, bulldozer, and one or more dump trucks to dig up and replace water crossings, install drainage structures, remove unstable fill, alter the road bed to reduce the potential for diversion of **flows** onto the road surface, and install rolling dips and/or water bars to route water and sediment.
5. All high- and medium-priority sites will be stormproofed within five years of completion of the assessments, with all **stormproofing** completed within 20 years of the issuance of the ITP.
6. Stormproofing will be completed on 750 miles within the **first** decade and 750 miles in the second decade. At least 75 miles of existing roads and landings will be stormproofed per year. PALCO can request that **NMFS** grant an exemption in writing **from** the 75 miles per year requirement based on lack of work time due to atypical summer wet weather patterns or the repair of an unusually high number of water crossings. Such an exemption will be granted on showing of good cause.
7. To the extent feasible given logistics and the cost of moving equipment, PALCO will stormproof the worst sites, i.e., those most likely to fail or deliver the greatest volume of sediment to waters, in the first 10-year period. In addition, the very highest priority sites, i.e., those at risk of imminent failure which would deliver significant amount of sediment to waters, will be stormproofed in the first three years.
8. **Stormproofing** shall be conducted between May 2 and October 14, subject to the following standards (these standards are the same for road construction/reconstruction/upgrade standards between June 2 and October 14):
  - From May 2 to October 14, road and landing stormproofing shall not occur during periods of rainfall of 0.25 inch or greater during a 24-hour period or less. Operations shall cease and not resume until and unless soil moisture conditions, in soil moved for the purposes of construction and reconstruction, are **no** wetter than is found during normal watering (dust abatement)

treatments or light rainfall, and the soil is not rutting or pumping fines. Operations shall not result in a visible increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, on any **construction/reconstruction** site, or on any road and landing surface, any of which drains directly to Class I, II, or III waters. Standing water on the road or landing which does not drain to Class I, II, or III waters is not applicable.

9. Stormproofing shall cease during the period between October 15 and May 1 (note the May 1 end-date **differs** from the road construction/reconstruction end-date of June 1), except for the following:
  - After October 15, **specific** stormproofing treatments, listed below, can continue **until** the **first** storm of 0.25 inch or greater in a **24-hour** period or less. The **stormproofing** treatments permitted during this period are as **follows**:
    - Installing rolling dips and water bars
    - **Armoring** culvert inlets and outlets
    - Armoring unstable road **fill**
    - Rocking road and landing surfaces
  - **After** the first storm as defined above, all **stormproofing** treatments shall comply with the road construction/reconstruction/upgrading **wet-weather**-period standards until May 1. **After** May 1, Section 6.3.3.2, number 8 applies.
10. Road and landing **fill** and actively eroding slopes that can be demonstrated as being at high risk of immediate failure and which may deliver sediment to waters can be treated between October 15 and May 1.
11. Stormproofing is considered complete when the specified corrective actions are complete, and the roads database and GIS system are updated to show that the subject road and landing have been stormproofed. The roads database will display where the treatments occurred, their extent (e.g., the milepost), and the type of treatment.
12. Refueling of equipment and vehicles will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings. Adding, draining, or depositing lubricants, coolants, or hydraulic fluids will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings.

### 6.3.3.3 Road Construction, Reconstruction, and Upgrades

1. For purposes of this Plan, a road will be considered upgraded when it is well drained and shows no signs of **imminent** failure (e.g., as evidenced by slumping **scarps** or cracks in the road fill) which would deliver sediment to waters. Actions necessary **to** upgrade a road include the installation of ditch relief culverts and/or rolling dips where significant downcutting of the ditch is noted and removal or stabilization of unstable till material at sites showing signs of imminent failure which could impact waters. An upgraded road, as described above, meets the definition used in the Plan of “complying with the specifications described in the *Handbook for Forest and Ranch Roads* (Weaver and Hagans, 1994.)”

Road upgrades differ from road stormproofing in that upgrades are not required on a specified schedule, are not necessarily identified through a sediment sources

assessment, are not tracked on a database, and may not be as extensive as stormproofing.

2. All THP-related roads and landings shall be upgraded, as defined above, or closed or **decommissioned**, as per Weaver and Hagans (1994). THP-related roads and landings are defined as those within the THP boundary and appurtenant to the THP area within the planning watershed(s) where the THP occurs. This road upgrading and closure shall result in **sufficient** sediment reduction in the planning watershed(s) to offset sediment production **from** the THP. The sediment reduction requirement remains in effect until a completed watershed analysis indicates that sediment is no longer causing an adverse impact to the aquatic environment.
3. All new and reconstructed roads will be built to site-specific **stormproof** specifications, as described by Weaver and Hagans (1994).
4. For all new roads and reconstructed water crossings, structures over fish-bearing and restorable fish-bearing waters will be designed to provide for unimpeded fish passage. This could involve use of bottomless or **baffled** culverts, bridges, or other such structures. Where culverts are used, they will be installed at an appropriate gradient, be sized to permit passage of a **100-year** recurrence interval flood without overtopping the culvert, and shall maintain a stream bed to ensure that the culverts are passable for fish and to prevent culvert "perching." Fish passage will be ensured by adhering to standards for culvert installation developed by NMFS, or by **NMFS** review and approval of alternate installation measures.
5. Roads shall be constructed or reconstructed as single-lane with periodic turnouts. Roads shall be no more than 12 to 14 feet wide. Periodic turnouts, combined with road width, may extend out to a total of 18 feet.
6. New and reconstructed roads and landings shall be located outside **RMZs** except for **RMZ** crossings, which shall be minimized.
7. Roads shall be constructed or reconstructed by outsliping and maintained with rolling dips or ditched roads with well-spaced ditch relief systems.
8. Road drainage structures and facilities shall be spaced at appropriate intervals such that surface flow originating from the road surface and ditch does not create a gully or sediment plume that connects with the channel network.
9. Roads which utilize an inside ditch shall have ditch relief culverts spaced at intervals no greater than those specified in Weaver and Hagans (1994).
10. New, reconstructed, and upgraded road-water crossings shall be constructed such that they do not have the potential to divert flows down the road or inside the ditch.
11. No roads or landings will be constructed or reconstructed across inner gorges, **headwall** swales, unstable areas, or areas having a high, very **high**, or extreme mass-wasting hazard rating, except as approved following the mass-wasting avoidance strategy. Refer to the mass-wasting avoidance strategy for road standards pre- and post-watershed analysis.

12. Road or landing construction, reconstruction, and upgrades shall not occur during the wet weather period, defined for this purpose as October 15 to June 1, unless the following conditions are met:
- No road or landing construction, reconstruction, and upgrading within 170 feet of Class I or II waters, or within the EEZ (**50** or 100 feet, respectively) of Class III waters.
  - The construction, reconstruction and upgrading **shall not/will** not cross Class I, II, or III waters.
  - No portion of the constructed, reconstructed, and upgraded road/landing shall cross an inner gorge, **headwall swale**, unstable area, extreme, very high, or high mass-wasting hazard area.
  - The soil moisture condition in the soils moved for purposes of construction, **reconstruction**, and upgrading shall be no wetter than is found during normal watering (dust abatement treatments or light rainfall, and the soil is not rutting or pumping fines).
  - During and after construction, reconstruction, and upgrading, there shall be no visible increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, construction/reconstruction site, or road surface, any of which drains directly to Class I, II, or III waters (standing water on the road that does not drain to Class I, II, or III waters is not applicable).
  - During construction, reconstruction, and upgrading, erosion control material of **sufficient** quantity shall be stockpiled **onsite** and utilized to prevent an increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, **construction/reconstruction** site, or road surface, any of which drains directly to Class I, II, or III waters.
13. From June 2 to October 14 (the period outside of the wet weather period), road or landing construction, reconstruction, and upgrades shall not occur during periods of rainfall of 0.25 inch or greater during a **24-hour** period or less. Operations shall cease and not resume until and unless soil moisture conditions, in soil moved for the purposes of construction and reconstruction, are no wetter than is found during normal watering (dust abatement) treatments or light rainfall, and the soil is not rutting or pumping fines. Operations shall not result in a visible increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, on any **construction/reconstruction** site, or road surface, any of which drain directly to Class I, II, or III waters. Standing water on the road which does not drain to Class I, II, or III waters is not applicable.
14. Road fill and actively eroding slopes that can be demonstrated as at high risk of immediate failure which may deliver sediment to waters can be upgraded between October 15 and June 1.
15. A federal permit violation has not occurred if an activity that results in an unavoidable input of sediment to waters occurs, even though all wet weather and construction/reconstruction requirements were properly followed, in addition to all required erosion control measures being properly installed. This does not relieve PALCO of any other requirements under other applicable federal and state laws.
16. Refueling of equipment and vehicles will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings. Adding, draining, or depositing lubricants, coolants, or hydraulic fluids will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings.

12. Road or landing construction, reconstruction, and upgrades shall not occur during the wet weather period, **defined** for this purpose as October 15 to June 1, unless the following conditions are met:
  - No road or landing construction, reconstruction, and upgrading within 170 feet of Class I or II waters, or within the EEZ (**50** or 100 feet, respectively) of Class III waters.
  - The construction, reconstruction and upgrading shall **not/will** not cross Class I, II, or III waters.
  - No portion of the constructed, reconstructed, and upgraded road/landing shall cross an inner gorge, **headwall** swale, unstable area, extreme, very high, or high mass-wasting hazard area.
  - The soil moisture condition in the soils moved for purposes of construction, reconstruction, and upgrading shall be no wetter than is found during normal watering (dust abatement) treatments or light rainfall, and the soil is not rutting or pumping **fin**es.
  - During and after construction, reconstruction, and upgrading, there shall be no visible increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, construction/reconstruction site, or road surface, any of which drains directly to Class I, II, or III waters (standing water on the road that does not drain to Class I, II, or III waters is not applicable).
  - During construction, reconstruction, and upgrading, erosion control material of **sufficient** quantity shall be stockpiled **onsite** and utilized to prevent an increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, construction/reconstruction site, or road surface, any of which drains directly to Class I, II, or III waters.
13. From June 2 to October 14 (the period outside of the wet weather period), road or landing construction, reconstruction, and upgrades shall not occur during periods of rainfall of 0.25 inch or greater during a 24-hour period or less. Operations shall cease and not resume until and unless soil moisture conditions, in soil moved for the purposes of construction and reconstruction, are no wetter than is found during normal watering (dust abatement) treatments or light rainfall, and the soil is not rutting or pumping fines. Operations shall not result in a visible increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, on any **construction/reconstruction** site, or road surface, any of which drain directly to Class I, II, or III waters. Standing water on the road which does not drain to Class I, II, or III waters is not applicable.
14. Road fill and actively eroding slopes that can be demonstrated as at high risk of immediate failure which may deliver sediment to waters can be upgraded between October 15 and June 1.
15. A federal permit violation has not occurred if an activity that results in an unavoidable input of sediment to waters occurs, even though all wet weather and construction/reconstruction requirements were properly followed, in addition to all required erosion control measures being properly installed. This does not relieve PALCO of any other requirements under other applicable federal and state laws.
16. Refueling of equipment and vehicles will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings. Adding, draining, or depositing lubricants, coolants, or hydraulic fluids will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings.

#### 6.3.3.4 Road Maintenance

1. Permanent roads through **RMZs** shall be treated and maintained with rock, chip seal, or pavement. This includes water crossings and approaches.
2. Proper surface drainage configuration of the road (e.g., outsloping) will be maintained during maintenance activities.
3. Inboard ditches will be maintained (e.g., **blading**) only where blockage or insufficient capacity occurs.
4. Routine corrective work that will prevent diversion of water from a watercourse or ditch (e.g., repair to inside ditches, cross drains, water bars, road surface, unblocking of culverts, etc.) will be performed as soon as conditions permit, consistent with federal and state law, regardless of the time of year.
5. Maintenance needs, other than those stated in number 4 above, identified between June 1 and October 15 will be performed prior to October 15. Maintenance needs, other than those stated in number 4 above, identified **after** October 15 and prior to June 1 will be performed after June 1.
6. Refueling of equipment and vehicles will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings. Adding draining or depositing lubricants, coolants, or hydraulic fluids will be done outside of the **RMZs** and stream crossings.

#### 6.3.3.5 Road Inspections

1. All THP roads, including drainage facilities and landings, shall be inspected annually for five years after operations, at a minimum.
2. **All** roads shall be inspected at least once annually after June 1 and prior to October 15 to ensure that drainage structures and facilities are in proper condition. This includes all improperly abandoned roads according to the definition provided by Weaver and Hagans (1994).
3. All roads shall be inspected again at least once during January or February, as soon as conditions permit access, following a storm event of 3 inches or greater in a 24 hour period or less. Multiple inspections during the winter period (October 15 to May 1) are encouraged, but only one inspection is required during January or February.
4. Roads and landings that cannot be inspected during any one of the annual inspections after June 1 and before October 15 must be closed or decommissioned according to guidelines provided by Weaver and Hagans (1994). This work must be conducted within the same timelines as the **stormproofing**.
5. Closed and decommissioned roads will be inspected after the first five-year storm event or five years after completion of work, whichever comes first, to ensure that treatments to restore natural drainage and hillslope **stability** are functioning as intended. If treatments are found to be ineffective, further treatments **shall** occur if the volume of sediment prevented **from** entering a channel by **additional** treatments is greater than that incurred by re-entering the site.

6. Annual logs documenting inspection efforts will be provided to the wildlife agencies and CDF on the same schedule as the monitoring reports.

#### 6.3.3.6 Wet Weather Road Use Restrictions

1. All road use is permitted when the road is dry; see the definition below.
2. Except as provided below, all use of non-paved roads shall cease during periods when precipitation is **sufficient** to generate overland flow off the road or when it is capable of leaving the road. Once road use has ceased due to the foregoing conditions, use shall not resume until and unless the road surface is dry. A **dry** road is one in which moisture is less than or equal to that found during normal watering (dust abatement) treatments or light rain, and soil is not rutting or pumping **fin**s causing a visible increase in turbidity in a drainage facility or road surface, any of which drains directly to Class I, II, or III waters. This provision shall be applied according to a rule of reasonableness, and it shall not prohibit, for example, use of a small segment of wet road on an otherwise dry road. If any permitted use results in damage to the road surface, drainage facilities, water bars, or stream crossings, the damage will be repaired within 24 hours after it occurs to eliminate the likelihood of related sediment reaching Class I, II, or III waters.
3. Consistent with federal and state law and regulation, in order to prevent or minimize significant adverse effects to the aquatic resource, emergency access is allowed during periods of wet weather in order to correct emergency, road-related problems in the form of blocked culverts, imminent road fill failure, other erosion problems, and emergency human safety situations.
4. On rocked roads, light vehicles (defined as trucks **3/4** ton or less, or smaller vehicles such as quadra-tracs or motorcycles) may be used during periods of wet weather. If the use of rocked roads results in road-related damage to the road surface, drainage facilities, water bars, or water crossings, the damage will be repaired using hand tools within 24 hours after the initial damage has occurred to eliminate the likelihood of related sediment reaching Class I, II, or III waters.
5. On non-rocked roads, light vehicles (defined as trucks %-ton or less, or smaller vehicles such as quadra-tracs or motorcycles) may be used during periods of wet weather only for the purposes of wildlife, fisheries, and plant surveys; HCP Monitor activities; agency inspections; and erosion inspections. If this use of non-rocked roads results in road-related damage to the road surface, drainage facilities, water bars, or water crossings, the damage will be repaired using hand tools within 24 hours after the initial damage has occurred to eliminate the likelihood of related sediment reaching Class I, II, or III waters. Damage should not be to such extent that heavy equipment would be required for repairs.
6. On non-rocked roads, light vehicles (defined as trucks %-ton or less, or smaller vehicles such as quadra-tracs or motorcycles) may be used during periods of wet weather 48 hours after the end of precipitation for the purposes of timber related operations including reforestation, felling, and bucking, and research and monitoring. Any damage light vehicle use causes to the road surface, drainage facilities, water bars, or water crossings will be repaired using hand tools within 24 hours after the initial damage has occurred to eliminate the likelihood of related

sediment reaching Class I, II, or III waters. Damage should not be to such extent that heavy equipment would be required for repairs.

#### 6.3.3.7 Hillslope Management

The **hillslope** management mass-wasting strategy applies to all portions of PALCO's ownership, including the **RMZs**. The prescriptions in the **RMZs** for mass wasting will not be less restrictive than the riparian prescription developed as part of watershed analysis, as appropriate and applicable to this Plan. The **hillslope** management prescriptions may be modified as a result of watershed analysis.

1. PALCO shall not harvest, including sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, and emergency timber operations, on mass-wasting areas of concern defined as areas of extreme mass-wasting **hazard**, very high mass-wasting **hazard**, high mass-wasting hazard, inner gorges, **headwall** swales, and unstable **areas**, including those within **the RMZs** on Class I, II, and III waters. This restriction may be **modified** as a result of watershed analysis.
2. Except as described below, PALCO will not construct or reconstruct roads across mass-wasting areas of concern defined as areas of extreme mass-wasting hazard, very high mass-wasting hazard, high mass-wasting hazard, inner gorges, **headwall** swales and unstable areas, prior to watershed analysis.
  - Newly constructed and reconstructed roads (not including **stormproofing**) on mass-wasting areas of concern (defined above) may be permitted prior to watershed analysis if PALCO provides the following:
    - A map of the mass-wasting areas of concern overlaid by all existing roads and all proposed new construction and reconstruction on a planning watershed scale for a one-year timeframe or longer
    - A geologic analysis of the risk of hillslope failure by the proposed new construction and reconstruction
  - All the information will be provided to the wildlife agencies who will make a determination if all, some, or none of the proposed road construction or reconstruction will be permitted across the mass-wasting areas of concern. This determination will be based on the proposed road locations, road specifications, and the likelihood of avoidance of significant adverse impacts to covered species. The wildlife agencies will work cooperatively to provide consistent determinations to PALCO within 60 days after receipt of the maps and geologic reports as described above. If any of the wildlife agencies determines that the proposed road construction/reconstruction will not be permitted, that agency will work cooperatively with PALCO and the other wildlife agencies to develop feasible alternative road locations **and/or** road specifications or other access methods that will avoid significant impacts to covered species.
3. After watershed analysis, roads may be constructed or reconstructed across **inner** gorges, unstable areas, **headwall** swales, or areas having a high, very high, or extreme mass-wasting hazard rating if the watershed analysis indicates that roads across these areas are appropriate. This watershed analysis determination shall include, but is not limited to, an assessment of risk to the aquatic environment by **qualified** wildlife agency aquatic biologist(s) or aquatic biologists acceptable to the

wildlife agencies. If the watershed analysis indicates that roads in these areas are appropriate, the proposed roads and road specifications shall be evaluated, at the time of road design, by qualified professional geologist(s), including, but not limited to, certified engineering geologist(s) licensed by the state of California. The **geologist(s) must** make a determination that a road and the road specifications are **sufficient** to result in a stable road prism that is not likely to trigger or exacerbate mass wasting.

4. Road **stormproofing**, road closure, and road decommissioning of existing roads are acceptable and encouraged on the mass-wasting areas of concern (identified above).
5. Before and/or **after** watershed analysis, the mass-wasting areas of concern can be further **defined** on the ground (**ground-truthed**) with respect to the area boundaries (size) as part of individual **THPs**. This refinement shall be conducted by the California Division of Mines and Geology (**CDMG**) or a qualified professional geologist, including but not limited to, certified engineering geologists licensed by the state of California.
6. The approximately **50,000-acre** area that has not yet been characterized for mass wasting shall be treated in the interim, prior to characterization, as a mass-wasting area of concern and shall be correctly characterized with defined boundaries on a THP basis using the same process employed for the entire ownership or watershed analysis. The characterization will be conducted by CDMG or a **qualified** professional geologist, including but not limited to, certified engineering geologists licensed by the state of California.
7. The wildlife agencies and **PALCO** will jointly establish a mass-wasting scientific review panel (**MWSRP**) to evaluate the definitions of high, very high, and extreme mass-wasting areas of concern. The panel may **modify** the definitions. The high, very high, and extreme mass-wasting areas of concern will be redelineated for the entire ownership in accordance with any modified definitions.
8. **The** federal agencies, in consultation with state agencies, will provide a set of criteria to indicate whether mass-wasting events are to be considered significant for aquatic resources for use in the mass-wasting watershed analysis module.
9. Definitions of mass-wasting areas of concern:
  - Inner Gorge- That area of a watercourse bank situated immediately adjacent to the watercourse channel, having side slope of 65 percent or greater and extending from the edge of the channel **upslope** to the first break-m-slope (a break-m-slope is defined as a slope less than 65 percent for a distance of 100 feet or more) above the watercourse channel.
  - **Unstable Area**- Characterized by slide areas or by some or all of the following: **hummocky** topography consisting of rolling bumpy ground, frequent benches, and depressions; short irregular surface drainages that begin and end on the slope; tension cracks and head wall **scarps**; slopes that are irregular and may be slightly concave in the upper half and convex in the lower half from previous slope failure; evidence of impaired **groundwater** movement resulting in local zones of saturation within the soil mass which are indicated at the surface of sag ponds with standing water, springs, or

wildlife agencies. If the watershed analysis indicates that roads in these areas are appropriate, the proposed roads and road specifications shall be evaluated, at the time of road design, by qualified professional geologist(s), including, but not limited to, certified engineering geologist(s) licensed by the state of California. The **geologist(s) must** make a determination that a road and the road specifications are **sufficient** to result in a stable road prism that is not likely to trigger or exacerbate mass wasting.

4. Road **stormproofing**, road closure, and road decommissioning of existing roads are acceptable and encouraged on the mass-wasting areas of concern (identified above).
5. Before and/or **after** watershed analysis, the mass-wasting areas of concern can be further **defined** on the ground (**ground-truthed**) with respect to the area boundaries (**size**) as part of individual **THPs**. This refinement shall be conducted by the California Division of Mines and Geology (**CDMG**) or a qualified professional geologist, including but not limited to, certified engineering geologists licensed by the state of California.
6. The approximately **50,000-acre** area that has not yet been characterized for mass wasting shall be treated in the interim, prior to characterization, as a mass-wasting area of concern and shall be correctly characterized with defined boundaries on a THP basis using the same process employed for the entire ownership or watershed analysis. The characterization will be conducted by CDMG or a **qualified** professional geologist, including but not limited to, certified engineering geologists licensed by the state of California.
7. The wildlife agencies and **PALCO** will jointly establish a mass-wasting scientific review panel (**MWSRP**) to evaluate the definitions of high, very high, and extreme mass-wasting areas of concern. The panel may **modify** the definitions. The high, very high, and extreme mass-wasting areas of concern will be redelineated for the entire ownership in accordance with any modified definitions.
8. **The** federal agencies, in consultation with state agencies, will provide a set of criteria to indicate whether mass-wasting events are to be considered significant for aquatic resources for use in the mass-wasting watershed analysis module.
9. Definitions of mass-wasting areas of concern:
  - Inner Gorge- That area of a watercourse bank situated immediately adjacent to the watercourse channel, having side slope of 65 percent or greater and extending from the edge of the channel **upslope** to the first break-m-slope (a break-m-slope is defined as a slope less than 65 percent for a distance of 100 feet or more) above the watercourse channel.
  - **Unstable Area**- Characterized by slide areas or by some or all of the following: **hummocky** topography consisting of rolling bumpy ground, frequent benches, and depressions; short irregular surface drainages that begin and end on the slope; tension cracks and head wall **scarps**; slopes that are irregular and may be slightly concave in the upper half and convex in the lower half from previous slope failure; evidence of impaired **groundwater** movement resulting in local zones of saturation within the soil mass which are indicated at the surface of sag ponds with standing water, springs, or

patches of wet ground. Some or all of the following may be present: hydrophytic vegetation prevalent; leaning, jackstrawed, or split trees are common; pistol butted trees with excessive sweep may occur in areas of **hummocky** topography (leaning and pistol butted trees should be used as indicators of unstable areas only in the presence of other indicators).

- **Headwall Swale**— A concave depression, with convergent slopes of 65 percent or greater, that is connected to waters via a continuous linear depression (a linear depression interrupted by a landslide deposit is considered continuous for this definition).
- **High, Very High, and Extreme Mass Wasting Hazard Areas**- Refer to the July 1998 Draft HCP, Volume II, Part D, Landscape **Assessment** of Geomorphic Sensitivity for the sensitivity ratings and to Volume V, Map 13.

#### 6.3.3.8 Measures to Minimize Surface Erosion in Riparian Areas

1. Within **RMZs** and **EEZs**, PALCO will treat **all** sites of exposed mineral soils caused by forestry activities if they are equal to or greater than 100 square feet. Treatments may include revegetation or other erosion control measures including, but not limited to, seeding and mulching.
2. Within **RMZs** and **EEZs**, PALCO will **treat** all sites of exposed mineral soils, on **hillslopes** greater than 30 percent if the site can deliver **fine** sediment to waters. Treatments may include revegetation or other erosion control measures including, but not limited to, seeding and mulching.
3. Water crossings will also be treated to avoid or minimize sediment delivery, using watershed analysis and/or road **stormproofing** protocols to determine the appropriate treatments to be used on all such crossings.
4. Cable corridors that divert or carry water away from the natural drainage pattern or **channelize** runoff that reaches waters shall have waterbreaks installed at intervals as per skid trail prescriptions by Weaver and Hagans (1994).

#### 6.3.4 Aquatic Habitat Conservation

##### 6.3.4.1 Measures for Timber Operations

###### 6.3.4.1.1 Channel Migration Zone

CMZ evaluation and mapping will be conducted as part of the watershed analysis process. All segments of Class I and II waters that have a Rosgen (1996) type C, D, or E channel morphology will be examined to identify the current boundaries of the **CMZ**. The **CMZ** boundary generally corresponds to the modern floodplain, but may also include river terraces that are subject to **significant** bank erosion. The **CMZ** is the area adjacent to the watercourse constructed by the river in the present climate and inundated during periods of high flow. The floodplain is delineated by either the flood-prone area or the **100-year** floodplain, **whichever** is greater (Rosgen 1996).

Prior to watershed analysis, PALCO must analyze areas and delineate the **CMZ** on a THP basis using a qualified **fluvial** geomorphologist before any THP, including appurtenant roads, situated **upslope** of a channel with C, D, or E morphology can be approved. **NMFS**, **CDFG**, **USFWS**, and EPA or NCRWQCB will be consulted regarding any such **mapping**.

#### *Within CMZs*

CMZs prescriptions may be **modified** as a result of watershed analysis.

1. PALCO shall not harvest in the CMZ. This prohibition includes, but is not **limited** to, sanitation, salvage, exemption harvest, and emergency timber operation, as defined in the **FPRs**.
2. In case of emergencies that could result in the loss of life or property and as per prior agreement with the wildlife agencies, harvest may be allowed in the CMZ. Loss of property is **defined** as a demonstrated high risk of loss of capital improvements such as bridges, roads, culverts, and houses; however it does not include the loss of vegetation.

#### **6.3.4.1.2 Class I RMZs**

All fish bearing (or restorable) Class I waters will have an RMZ. The RMZ for Class I waters is divided into two bands, the no-harvest band and the outer band. The bands are measured **from** 0 to 100 feet, and 100 to 170 feet, respectively, from the watercourse transition line, as **defined** by the **FPRs** (14 California Code of Regulations [CCR] 895.1), or the outer edge of the CMZ (see below). Class I RMZ prescriptions may be **modified** as a result of watershed analysis.

#### *Prescriptions for the Entire Class I RMZ*

1. The RMZ measures 170 feet (slope distance) from the watercourse transition line or the outer CMZ edge (if a CMZ is present) on each side of the watercourse. Willows shall not be considered permanent vegetation for the purpose of determining the watercourse transition line.
2. No sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, or emergency timber operations (as **defined** and allowed in the **FPRs**) shall occur in the **RMZ**, except as per prior agreement with the wildlife agencies in accordance with the approved HCP.
3. All portions of downed wood (i.e., LWD), except as defined as slash in the **FPRs**, will be retained.
4. **Trees** felled during current harvesting operations and **THP-approved** road construction are not considered downed wood for purposes of retention.
5. Felled hazard trees or snags not associated with a THP are considered downed wood and are to be retained in the general vicinity.
6. Trees that fall naturally onto roads, landings, or harvest units within the **RMZ** are considered downed wood and are to be retained in the general vicinity.
7. All non-hazard snags will be retained, as per the snag policy in the HCP.
8. The RMZ is an EEZ for timber operations, except for roads and permitted equipment crossings.
9. Full suspension yarding will be used when feasible. Full suspension yarding is not feasible on flat ground, in other sites with limited deflection, where an adjacent landowner will not provide permission to secure a cable, or where a full suspension yarding **system** would jeopardize the safety of field personnel. For the purposes of

**this** prescription, the expanded definition of feasibility according to the **FPRs** does not apply as an additional determination beyond that described above. For these conditions, yarding will be conducted in a manner that avoids ground disturbance that might deliver sediment to waters to the maximum extent practicable. Where ground disturbance occurs, PALCO will treat (e.g., through seeding, mulching, etc.) all sites with exposed mineral soil that can reasonably be expected to deliver sediment to waters (e.g., gullies, ruts).

10. Trees not marked for harvest may be felled within the **RMZ** to provide safety clearance for cable yarding corridors. Such felling will be done only as needed to ensure worker safety. In such cases, to the extent possible given site conditions and the **FPRs**, **trees** will be felled toward the waters to provide LWD and will be identified in **THPs** as an in lieu practice (14 CCR 916.1). Regardless, trees felled **within** the RMZ for safety purposes will be retained as downed wood.
11. Trees not marked for harvest which are damaged in the cable yarding corridors must be retained in place, either standing or as downed wood.
12. There will be a maximum of one entry every 20 years.
13. If any area within the RMZ, including the 50 percent slope provision band, falls within the boundary of a mass-wasting area of concern, then the mass-wasting strategy applies for that area.

*Prescriptions for Class I No-harvest Band, 0 to 100 Feet*

1. No harvest, including sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, or emergency timber operations, shall occur in the no-harvest band.
2. Road segments within the **first** 30 feet of the no-harvest band must be mitigated by extending the no-harvest band on the opposite side of the waters from the existing road an equivalent distance of that portion of the road prism within the no-harvest band. In the case of **RMZ** road crossings, the **first** 50 feet of road extending inland from the watercourse transition line is exempt **from** this mitigation.

*Prescriptions for the Late Seral Class I Outer Band, 100 to 170 Feet*

1. Only single-tree selection will occur within the outer band.
2. Harvest will only occur in the outer band **if there** is a preharvest conifer basal area of 276 square feet per acre or greater within the outer band on each side of the waters.
3. A minimum **240-square-foot**, post-harvest conifer basal area per acre within the outer band will be retained on each side of the waters.
4. No more than 40 percent of the conifer basal area may be harvested in a single entry.
5. Tree size and quantities shall be retained per Table 17 (July 1998 Draft HCP, Volume I). Larger tree size classes (including those larger than 40 inches) shall be used for replacement if stated size classes are not present.

6. Basal area measurements will be made for conformance at every 200-foot lineal segment of the RMZ. Surface area covered in roads and landings will be included in all calculations of **basal area**.
7. The 50 percent steep slope provision requires that for all slopes 50 percent and greater adjacent **to** the RMZ, the RMZ *outer* band prescriptions, at a minimum, shall be extended **upslope** to the break-in-slope (**defined** as a slope less than 50 percent for a **distance** of more than 100 feet) or **upslope** to a slope distance of 400 feet measured from the watercourse transition line or the outer edge of the CMZ, whichever is greater.

#### 6.3.4.1.3 Class II RMZs

**All** non-fish bearing Class II waters will have an RMZ. The RMZ for **Class II** waters is divided into two bands, the no-harvest band and the selective entry band. The bands are measured from 0 to 30 feet, and 30 to 130 feet, respectively, from the watercourse transition line or the outer edge of the CMZ (see below). **Class II** RMZ prescriptions may be modified as a result of watershed analysis.

##### *Prescriptions for the Entire Class II RMZ*

1. The **RMZ** is 130 feet (slope distance) **from** the watercourse transition line or the outer CMZ edge (if a CMZ is present) on each side of the waters. Willows shall not be considered permanent vegetation for the purpose of determining the watercourse transition line.
2. No sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, or emergency timber operations (**as** defined and allowed in the **FPRs**) shall occur in the RMZ, except as per prior agreement with the wildlife agencies in accordance with the approved HCP.
3. All portions of downed wood (i.e., LWD), except as defined as slash in the **FPRs**, will be retained.
4. Trees felled during current harvesting operations and THP-approved road construction are not considered downed wood for purposes of retention.
5. Felled hazard trees or snags not associated with a THP are considered downed wood and are to be retained near the location of the removal.
6. Trees that fall naturally onto roads, landings, or harvest units within the **RMZ** are considered downed wood and are to be retained near the location of the removal.
7. All non-hazard snags will be retained, as per the snag policy in the HCP.
8. The RMZ is an EEZ for timber operations, except for roads and permitted equipment crossings.
9. Full suspension yarding will be used when feasible. Full suspension yarding is not feasible on flat ground, in other sites with limited deflection, where an adjacent landowner will not provide permission to secure a cable, or where a full suspension yarding system would jeopardize the safety of field personnel. For the purposes of this prescription, the expanded definition of feasibility according to the **FPRs** does not apply as an additional determination beyond that described above. For these

conditions, yarding will be conducted in a manner that avoids ground disturbance that might deliver sediment to waters to the maximum extent practicable. Where ground disturbance occurs, PALCO will treat (e.g., through seeding, mulching, etc.) all sites with exposed mineral soil that can reasonably be expected to deliver sediment to waters (e.g., gullies, ruts).

10. Trees not marked for harvest may be felled within the **RMZ** to provide safety clearance for cable yarding corridors. Such felling will be done only as needed to ensure worker safety. In such cases, to the extent possible given site conditions and the **FPRs**, trees will be felled toward the waters to provide LWD and will be **identified in THPs** as an in lieu practice (14 CCR 916.1). Regardless, trees felled within the **RMZ** for safety purposes will be retained as downed wood.
11. Trees not marked for harvest which are damaged in the cable yarding corridors must be retained in place, either standing or as downed wood.
12. There will be a maximum of one entry every 20 years.
13. If any area **within** the RMZ, including the 50 percent steep slope provision band and the sediment filtration band, falls within the boundary of a mass-wasting area of concern, then the mass-wasting strategy applies for that area.

*Prescriptions for Class II No-harvest Band, 0 to 30 Feet*

1. No harvest, including sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, or emergency timber operations, shall occur in the no-harvest band.
2. Road segments within the no-harvest band must be mitigated by extending the no-harvest band on the opposite side of the waters from the existing road an equivalent distance of that portion of the road prism within the no-harvest band. In the case of RMZ road crossings, the first 50 feet of road extending inland from the watercourse transition line is exempt from this mitigation.

*Prescriptions for the Late Seral Class II Selective-entry Band, 30 to 130 Feet*

1. Only single-tree selection will occur within the selective entry band.
2. Harvest will only occur in the selective entry band if there is a preharvest conifer basal area of 276 square feet per acre or greater within the selective entry band on each side of the waters.
3. A minimum **240-square-foot**, post-harvest conifer basal area per acre within the selective entry band will be retained on each side of the waters.
4. No more than 40 percent of the conifer basal area may be harvested in a single entry.
5. Tree size and quantities shall be retained per Table 17 (July 1998 **Draft** HCP, Volume I). Larger tree size classes (including those larger than 40 inches) shall be used for replacement if stated size classes are not present.

6. Basal area measurements will be made for conformance at every 200-foot lineal segment of the RMZ. Surface area covered in roads and landings will be included in all calculations of basal area.
7. The 50 percent steep slope provision requires that the **RMZ** selective *entry* band prescriptions for all slopes 50 percent and greater adjacent to the RMZ, at a minimum, shall be extended **upslope** to the break-in-slope (defined as a slope less than 50 percent for a distance of more than 100 feet) or **upslope** to a slope distance of 400 feet measured **from** the watercourse transition line or the outer edge of the CMZ, whichever is greater.
8. For all slopes less than 50 percent adjacent to the **RMZ**, a sediment filtration band shall be established from 130 to 170 feet. All downed wood shall be retained within this band (except slash), **fire** ignition is prohibited, and the band is an EEZ.

#### 6.3.4.1.4 Class iii **RMZs**

All Class III waters will have an RMZ. The **RMZ** for Class III waters is divided into two bands. The **RMZs** are measured from 0 to 50 feet for slopes less than 50 percent and from 0 to 100 feet for slopes 50 percent and greater, measured **from** the watercourse transition line. Class III RMZ prescriptions may be modified as a result of watershed analysis.

##### *Prescriptions for All Class III **RMZs***

1. A scientific and statistically valid study will be designed by an independent party jointly selected by PALCO and the wildlife agencies to address questions put forward by PALCO and the wildlife agencies regarding Class III input of sediment and large wood and the effectiveness of different prescriptions.
2. If any area within the RMZ falls within the definition of a mass-wasting area of concern, then the mass-wasting strategy applies.
3. All **RMZ** width requirements stop at the hydrologic divide.
4. All areas are **EEZs** for timber operations, except for roads and permitted equipment crossings. All tractor road water crossings must be flagged on the ground prior to the pre-harvest inspection and shown on the THP map in order to be adequately evaluated for the potential to generate sediment.
5. Skid trails shall be stabilized as per the 1998 **FPRs**, per an approved THP in accordance with the Class I/II watercourse standard.
6. All downed wood and debris shall be retained within the **EEZs**, except for cases of emergency as per agreement with the wildlife agencies.
7. All downed wood and debris in the channel shall be retained.
8. Trees felled during current harvesting operations and THP-approved road construction are not considered downed wood for purposes of retention.
9. Felled hazard trees or snags not associated with a THP are considered downed wood and are to be retained in the location of the removal.

10. Trees that fall naturally onto roads, landings, or harvest units within the RMZ are considered downed wood and are to be retained in the location of the removal.
11. Full suspension yarding will be used when feasible. Full suspension yarding is not feasible on flat ground, in other sites with limited deflection, where an adjacent landowner will not provide permission to secure a cable, or where a full suspension yarding system would **jeopardize** the safety of field personnel. For the purposes of this prescription, the expanded **definition** of feasibility according to the **FPRs** does not apply as an additional determination beyond that described above. For these conditions, yarding will be conducted in a manner that avoids ground disturbance that might deliver sediment to waters to the maximum extent practicable. Where ground disturbance occurs, PALCO will treat (e.g., through seeding, mulching, etc.) all sites with exposed mineral soil that can reasonably be expected to deliver sediment to a waters (e.g., gullies, ruts).
12. Trees not marked for harvest may be felled within the RMZ to provide safety clearance for cable yarding corridors. Such felling will be done only as needed to ensure worker safety. In such cases, to the extent possible given site conditions and the **FPRs**, trees will be felled toward the waters to provide LWD and will be identified in **THPs** as an in lieu practice (14 CCR 916.1). Regardless, trees felled within the RMZ for safety purposes will be retained as downed wood.
13. Trees not marked for harvest which are damaged in the cable yarding corridors must be retained in place, either standing or as downed wood.
14. PALCO shall not harvest in the **0- to 30-foot** band, with the exception of a maximum of one entry, prior to watershed analysis, **into** 1,400 acres for harvest (identified in item 16 below) and 775 acres for commercial thinning (**identified** in item 17 below).
15. No sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, or emergency timber operations are allowed in the **0- to 30-foot** band.
16. Subject to all other applicable HCP requirements and watershed analysis, harvesting is permitted on the 1400 acres of mid-successional and late **seral** vegetation types identified in the Sustained Yield Plan over the first five years in the **0- to 30-foot** band, following the standards below:
  - One harvest entry, maximum, prior to watershed analysis
  - 0- to 10-foot, no-harvest band for protection of the channel and bank
  - Maximum removal of **1/3** conifer basal area per 200 linear feet
  - Harvesting will be distributed across all diameter classes
  - Trees removed for a road, skid trail or cable corridor will be counted towards the maximum volume and basal area calculations
  - All sub and non-merchantable conifers will be left standing **onsite** if feasible
  - No sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, or emergency timber operations
17. Subject to all other applicable HCP requirements and watershed analysis, commercial thinning is permitted on the 775 acres identified in the Sustained Yield Plan over the first five years in the 0- to 30-foot band, following the standards below:

- One thinning entry, maximum, prior to watershed analysis
- 0 to 10 foot no harvest for protection of the channel and bank
- Maximum removal of **1/3** conifer basal area per 200 linear feet
- **Thinning** will be distributed across all diameter classes
- The site will be recaptured within 5 to 10 years
- Trees removed for a road, skid trail or cable corridor **will** be counted towards the volume and basal area **maximum**
- All sub and non-merchantable conifers will be left standing **onsite** if feasible
- No sanitation salvage, exemption harvest, or emergency timber operations

*Prescriptions for Class III Buffers with Slopes Less than 50 Percent*

1. No-harvest band from 0 to 30 feet with the exception of the **1,400-acre** harvest and **775-acre** commercial thinning identified previously.
2. Sediment filtration band **from** 30 to 50 feet, apply all prescriptions identified above in items 1 through 13.

*Prescriptions for Class III Buffers with Slopes 50 Percent and Greater*

1. No-harvest band from 0 to 30 feet, with the exception of the **1,400-acre** harvest and **775-acre** commercial thinning identified previously.
2. Sediment filtration band **from** 30 to 100 feet, apply all prescriptions **identified** above in items 1 through 13.

#### 6.3.4.2 Burning

1. No fire ignition shall occur in the **RMZs** and **EEZs**. **Fire** ignition shall occur so fire will back its way toward the **RMZs** and **EEZs**.
2. **PALCO** shall only ignite **fires** on one side of the RMZ at a time if topographic features and/or fuel patterns would increase the likelihood that fires lit on both sides of an RMZ would result in intrusion into the RMZ.
3. Burning is limited to spring and fall when fuel moisture conditions, relative humidity, fuel loading, and atmospheric conditions such as wind are conducive to controlled burning.
4. Fuel breaks in the RMZ shall be avoided. Minimal hand clearing for fuel breaks in the RMZ may be conducted to prevent and control escaped fires. No overstory removal will be undertaken. If areas of bare soil are exposed from fuel breaks or fire that could result in **fine** sediment inputs into Class I, II, or III waters, such areas will be treated as per the surface erosion requirements.
5. All burns are conducted pursuant to permits issued by CDF.
6. When available and feasible, a helitorch will be used to ignite **fires** for better directional and speed control of the **fire**.

### 6.3.4.3 Disturbance Index

1. As modified by the elements below, PALCO shall follow the process identified in the July 1998 Draft HCP, Volume II, Part E, Assessment of Watershed Disturbances and Recovery.
2. The disturbance index and its elements may be modified as a result of watershed analysis, subject to approval by the wildlife agencies.
3. The disturbance index will be calculated at the hydrologic unit scale for PALCO's ownership.
4. The disturbance index will be modified to account for all roads, **distinct from** other harvest activities.
5. Roads that are used or maintained at least once during the 10-year time factor will remain in the index calculation, and the disturbance ratings will not diminish over time.
6. Roads that are improperly abandoned as per the Weaver and **Hagans (1994)** definition will remain in the index calculation, and the disturbance ratings will not diminish over time. Roads that are properly closed or decommissioned are not considered **to** be improperly abandoned.
7. The disturbance index will be modified **to** account for all mass wasting events (landslides, debris torrents, etc.), distinct from other activities and ratings.
8. The upper limit of the disturbance index is set at 20 percent.
9. The initial disturbance indices, as modified, will be calculated for the entire ownership, at the hydrologic unit scale, within three months of the issuance of the ITP. PALCO shall submit this information to the wildlife agencies in a report form with the disturbance index and supporting calculations immediately following each hydrologic unit calculation. Subsequent calculations will be on a THP basis.
10. If the calculated index is at or above 20 percent, then PALCO shall refrain from all activities with the highest disturbance ratings, 0.7 and above, and cannot increase the index from one THP to another. Activities shall be conducted in a manner that lowers the index on an annual basis and shall be at or below 20 percent within the 10-year time factor.
11. To ensure that Class I sub-basin **salmonid** populations are not extirpated in the hydrologic units with a disturbance index in excess of 20 percent, PALCO shall apply the following restrictions until watershed analysis is complete and **site-specific** information is generated on Class I sub-basins. In addition to the following operational restrictions, PALCO shall conduct only those actions that result in a decrease in the index in Class I sub-basins until the index drops below 20 percent:
  - Conduct no **clearcut** or rehabilitation harvest.
  - Conduct full suspension skyline or helicopter yarding only.
  - Conduct no new road construction or reconstruction.

- **Limit** wet weather period operations (October 15 to June 1) to erosion control maintenance, planting, falling and bucking, and full suspension yarding to landings outside the sub-basin.
  - Conduct no broadcast burning.
  - Conduct no skid trail or layout construction.
  - Treat all areas of bare mineral soil outside of **RMZs**, **EEZs**, and equipment limitation zones (**ELZs**) created by timber operations of 400 square feet or any less than 400 square feet if the site can deliver sediment to streams.
  - Remove no more than 50 percent of the basal area in one entry.
12. If the index is below 20 percent, no activities will be conducted that will cause the index to exceed the 20 percent upper limit.

#### 6.3.4.4 Measures for Other Plan Area Activities

##### 6.3.4.4.1 Commercial Rock Quarries

Two commercial rock quarries are covered under the ITP for a period ending on March 1, 2001. These two rock quarries are identified as Rock Quarry 1/Road 24 in the Yager Creek drainage and Rock Quarry 2/Road 9 in the Lawrence Creek drainage.

1. PALCO shall continue to use engineered detention ponds and erosion control to reduce impacts on waters and riparian areas.
2. PALCO shall implement appropriate mitigation so that rock quarry operations do not result in a visible increase in turbidity in any drainage facility, work site, quarry area, etc, any of which drain to Class I, II, or III waters. Appropriate mitigation includes, but is not limited to, wet weather operating limitations, installation of sediment control structure, limitations on overburden placement and distribution, removal of spoil material, revegetation, and abandonment.
3. The site specifics of the rock quarries and their effects at the hydrologic unit scale shall be evaluated during watershed analysis. Additional mitigation, identified above, may be implemented depending on the results of watershed analysis.
4. The wildlife agencies commit to work with PALCO to process an amendment to the HCP to continue coverage of the two rock quarries after expiration of the initial two-year period.

##### 6.3.4.4.2 Borrow Pits

Borrow pits are covered under the ITP for a five-year period ending on March 1, 2004.

1. PALCO shall **utilize** the same mitigation requirements for borrow pits as those required for roads, including the prohibition on new borrow pits in the **RMZs**, prohibition on new borrow pits in the mass-wasting areas of concern prior to watershed analysis, road **construction/reconstruction** standards, and wet weather operations.
2. **Borrow** pits will be mapped and analyzed for site-specific and hydrologic unit scale impacts as **part** of watershed analysis. Additional mitigation and minimization measures for borrow pits may be required as a result of watershed analysis. Additional mitigation may include, but is not limited to, installation of sediment

control structures, limitations on overburden placement and distribution, removal of spoil material, revegetation, and abandonment.

3. The wildlife agencies commit to work with PALCO to process an amendment to the HCP to continue coverage of borrow pits after the expiration of the initial five-year period.

#### 6.3.4.4.3 Water Drafting

1. PALCO shall **utilize** the most current NMFS water drafting screen specifications. As of the effective date, the screen specifications described below are the most current and shall be used until they are replaced by NMFS
2. The screen shall be kept in good repair and shall be used whenever water is drafting (i.e., pumped from the stream into a truck or trailer).
3. The screen face shall be parallel to the flow of the water.
4. The screen shall have an approach velocity of no more than 0.33 foot per second. The approach velocity is the velocity of the water through the screen openings.
  - The screen shall have at least 12 square feet of open area per cubic foot per second of the maximum diversion rate (12 square feet of screen per 450 gallons/minute).
  - Round openings shall not exceed **3/32** inch in diameter.
  - Square openings shall not exceed **3/32** inch measured diagonally.
  - Slotted openings shall not exceed 0.0689 inch in width (approximately **1/16** inch)
5. The screen shall be cleaned as often as necessary to prevent the approach velocity from exceeding 0.33 foot per second and to prevent the head differential through the screen from exceeding 2 inches.
6. The diversion rate shall not exceed the inflow rate.

#### 6.3.5 Aquatic Monitoring

PALCO's current aquatic monitoring, including compliance, effectiveness, and trend, will be revised after each watershed analysis to respond to the specificity of prescriptions, assumptions, and questions for each hydrologic unit.

PALCO is responsible for the cost of the monitoring program.

##### 6.3.5.1 Compliance Monitoring

Compliance monitoring activities **will** contribute to the goal of achieving 100 percent prescription implementation. Compliance monitoring includes four components: third-party monitoring, a THP checklist, the best management practice evaluation program (BMPEP), and application of the compliance findings.

##### 6.3.5.1.1 HCP Monitor

The HCP monitor, as described in Section 6.13 shall have full access to PALCO's land at all times to inspect any covered activity and shall be present **onsite** during every timber harvest

conducted by or on behalf of PALCO. The HCP monitor shall also, at the request of the wildlife agencies, monitor the effectiveness of the Aquatics Conservation Plan.

#### **6.3.5.1.2 THP Checklist**

PALCO resource professionals preparing **THPs** and timber harvest exemptions and agencies conducting the environmental review of **PALCO's** plans will be guided by the "Pacific Lumber Company Timber Harvest Plan Checklist." The checklist will be used to confirm that all relevant elements of the PALCO Aquatics Conservation Plan are contained in the **THPs** and made enforceable under the **THPs**. PALCO and the wildlife agencies will revise the checklist during watershed analysis to create a THP checklist for each watershed to ensure implementation of watershed-specific prescriptions.

#### **6.3.5.1.3 Framework, Best Management Practice Evaluation Program**

PALCO will also conduct compliance monitoring as part of the BMPEP (example attached). PALCO shall use this approach to document how well the aquatic strategy prescriptions are being applied. This program sets criteria for **deter**-mining which **THPs** will be monitored and integrates compliance monitoring requirements with effectiveness monitoring to minimize personnel costs and **maximize** efficiency.

Attached are an example of a worksheet and a description of an evaluation procedure developed for the BMPEP of the **Pacific Southwest Region** of USFS (**USFS**, 1992). This procedure is also used in a modified form by the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection (**CDF**). The program **identifies** 28 hillslope evaluation procedures for implementation and effectiveness monitoring. The approach **specifies** how to sample sites to be evaluated, the timing and frequency of evaluations, details on what factors are to be rated and others. This program has been the subject of an ongoing review by USFS, EPA, and the California Water Resources Control Board.

PALCO will use the **BMPEP** framework to develop watershed-specific implementation and **hillslope** effectiveness monitoring protocols. PALCO will **draft** a separate evaluation procedure for related sets of prescriptions in the Aquatics Conservation Plan, including those on the THP Checklist (described above) and present each for review, revision, and **final** approval by the wildlife agencies within one year **after** issuance of the **ITPs**. **As** watershed analysis is completed for each hydrologic unit, revised sets of evaluation procedures will be developed following the **BMPEP** framework within 30 days after the final establishment of prescriptions. In the interim, the CDF protocols will be used in place of the BMPEP.

The elements of the compliance and hillslope effectiveness evaluation program and protocols will include the following:

1. A statement of required **qualifications** for those who will conduct the monitoring
2. Database and data storage, retrieval, and annual reporting requirements
3. A procedure and criteria for developing a random sample pool of **THPs** and exemptions for each HU from which **THPs** and exemptions are to be randomly selected and sampled
4. A procedure and criteria for developing random sample pools of sites from among the randomly selected **THPs and** exemptions for each type of prescription to be evaluated for implementation and hillslope effectiveness

5. A stepby-step procedure to identify sample site locations (e.g., for **RMZs**, roads, and harvest units) and the timing (e.g., after the first winter storms) of implementation and hillslope effectiveness monitoring for each of the prescriptions
6. For each evaluation procedure, detailed descriptions **a)** of how parameters are to be measured and **b)** of rating criteria
7. Confirmation that the relevant prescriptions were made part of the THP or exemption
8. Compliance and hillslope effectiveness monitoring evaluations in the field at the appropriate time using an evaluation form and rating criteria developed for each prescription
9. Procedures for timely forwarding of completed field forms, filing of forms, data entry, and database management and reporting to the reviewing agencies
10. Procedures for timely corrective actions

Initially, all **THPs** and exemptions in each hydrologic unit and calendar year that meet selection criteria approved by the wildlife agencies will be subject to compliance and hillslope effectiveness monitoring. Examples of selection criteria include plans where hillslope best management practices (**BMPs**) pertaining to erosion control and **RMZs** have been tested by winter storms, plans with specific geologic concerns, and others. PALCO and the wildlife agencies will develop selection criteria **specific** to the Aquatics Conservation Plan. Not every RMZ or road, however, in every THP and exemption need be evaluated. The individual random sample pools of sites for each related set of prescriptions will initially be comprised of at least 50 percent of the sites where the prescriptions are applied. The wildlife agencies, in consultation with PALCO, will decide whether this proportion of sites where prescriptions are applied will continued to be monitored. The decision will be based on the results of compliance and hillslope effectiveness monitoring presented in annual monitoring reports. In addition, the wildlife agencies will conduct quarterly audits of the compliance monitoring and annual audits of the hillslope effectiveness monitoring evaluations carried out by PALCO to help ensure monitoring protocols are being followed.

#### **6.3.5. 1.4 Application of Compliance Monitoring Findings**

PALCO and the wildlife agencies shall identify **recurring** successes and problems with aquatic strategy prescription implementation by conducting 1) quarterly reviews of the compliance monitoring reports, 2) hillslope inspections, and 3) audits of how PALCO includes the aquatic strategy prescriptions in **THPs** and follows monitoring procedures. Problems with implementation shall lead to remedies that will include, but will not be limited to, **training** of personnel, adjustments in **RPFs** and licensed timber operators' oversight and supervision over contractors and field crews, changes in equipment, **refinements** of prescriptions, and **regulatory** sanctions.

#### **6.3.5.2 Effectiveness Monitoring**

PALCO, with input from the wildlife agencies and peer review panels, will craft hillslope effectiveness monitoring, **instream** effectiveness monitoring, and trend monitoring strategies for each hydrologic unit. The exact details of what, where, when, and how PALCO will monitor will be determined by questions and hypotheses posed by PALCO and the wildlife agencies. PALCO

and the wildlife agencies will develop these monitoring objectives based on the findings of watershed analysis and other sources of assembled information.

PALCO will use effectiveness monitoring as a basis for evaluating the results of carrying out prescriptions on the features or processes that occur on the hillslope and on those in the **instream** environment. Hillslope effectiveness monitoring will help PALCO determine whether properly implemented prescriptions on the hillslope actually work (e.g., properly installed water bars actually prevented road surface **rill** erosion). **Instream** effectiveness monitoring will be used to determine whether the prescriptions result in protection of aquatic values (e.g., maintained or decreased the percent of fine sediment in spawning **riffles**).

PALCO will monitor both **instream** and **upslope** conditions to **assess** the effectiveness of the Aquatics Conservation Plan. These effectiveness studies, in turn, will provide most of the impetus for the adaptive management component of the Plan.

#### 6.3.5.2.1 large Woody Debris and Riparian Butters

PALCO will obtain baseline information on LWD levels and recruitment potential **from** riparian stands during the watershed analysis process for each HU, as well as through ongoing resource assessment efforts, including those of CDFG. This information will also be collected as part of **PALCO's** trend monitoring program (Section 6.3.5.3). PALCO and the wildlife agencies will develop questions and hypotheses to be tested through compliance monitoring and hillslope and **instream** effectiveness monitoring while using this baseline information.

**PALCO's** hillslope effectiveness monitoring will indicate whether forest stands within riparian buffers are developing increasing numbers of large trees. Information on stand conditions will be collected during THP preparation and review and through watershed analysis. As an initial indication of the effectiveness of correctly implemented prescriptions applied to riparian buffers, PALCO will show that currently understocked riparian stands will develop **sufficient** basal area and large trees to permit harvest.

#### 6.3.5.2.2 Water Temperature

PALCO will monitor water temperatures during **instream** effectiveness monitoring and trend monitoring. PALCO will monitor **instream** water temperatures to see if recorded values show an increasing or decreasing trend over time. Water temperature data will be collected for at least five years to determine initial trends. PALCO will also determine the effectiveness of the aquatic strategy for temperature by monitoring changes in canopy closure over waters.

#### 6.3.5.2.3 Sediment

In conjunction with **instream** effectiveness monitoring and trends monitoring, PALCO will monitor data on **instream** sediment levels, channel morphology, stream bed **aggradation/degradation**, and biological metrics sensitive to sediment (e.g., invertebrate diversity).

PALCO **will** assess the effectiveness of the sediment control measures by monitoring sediment production rates from roads and hillslopes. In this way, PALCO **will** detect any shortcomings in sediment control measures earlier than **if the company depended only on instream** conditions. PALCO will institute alternate management approaches to address identified shortcomings through the adaptive management process.

PALCO will conduct sediment source inventories as part of the watershed analysis process for each hydrologic unit. These studies will provide baseline data on the number, location, and size of sediment sources on the ownership. In addition, these studies will provide sediment budgets identifying the amount of sediment being delivered to waters **from different** sources. Within five years of completing the baseline sediment studies, PALCO will conduct **followup** studies. These will determine the extent to which these sediment sources remain active and new sources develop (e.g., how many slides have occurred in the interim), their relationship to management activities, and how the rates of management-related surface erosion and landslides compare to the rates in the baseline period. PALCO will continue to inventory surface erosion within harvest units, bank erosion, new **landslides**, and road-related failures **as** they occur. These **followup** studies will continue to be completed at five-year intervals in conjunction with the watershed analysis **revisitations** for the life of the PALCO Aquatics Conservation Plan.

Hillslope and **instream** effectiveness monitoring and trends monitoring will provide the necessary information for **determining** how the PALCO Aquatics Conservation Plan affects sediment delivery to waters. In addition, because the follow-up studies will examine the relationship between management and sediment production, **PALCO** will use study results as guidance on how to modify management activities, if necessary, to reduce sediment production through the adaptive management process.

Sediment parameters are perhaps the most **difficult** on which to conduct effectiveness monitoring. Given this **difficulty**, PALCO will modify its approach for determining the effectiveness of sediment control measures as new data and scientific results become available.

#### 6.3.5.2.4 Amphibian and Reptile Habitat and Population Monitoring

PALCO will work with the USFWS and CDFG to develop a habitat module for all covered amphibians and reptiles. As this module is applied across **PALCO's** ownership, information that will help monitor the effectiveness of aquatic prescriptions to protect amphibians and reptiles will become available. This module will be included in all watershed analyses.

PALCO and the agencies will conduct **instream** effectiveness monitoring to determine the adequacy of the aquatic strategy for amphibian and reptile species. For this purpose, PALCO will use the temperature, sediment, and LWD information that will be collected on both Class I and II waters. PALCO will modify amphibian and reptile monitoring efforts as new data and scientific results become available.

#### 6.3.5.2.5 Cost-benefit Effectiveness

Cost-benefit effectiveness studies are needed to determine whether the benefits of protective measures being implemented by PALCO in the field are proportional to the costs to the company. Similarly, such studies could identify alternate mitigation approaches that continue to protect resources, but at lower costs to the company. At present, PALCO is generally able to identify the costs of specific mitigation measures with greater ease and certainty than it can identify the benefits of these measures to fish and wildlife. As PALCO obtains new information on the biological benefits of mitigation within the Aquatics Conservation Plan, PALCO will be able to more accurately assess the relationships between costs and benefits.

### 6.3.5.2.6 Hillslope Effectiveness Monitoring

#### *Framework: BMP Evaluation Program*

Refer to the discussion above regarding compliance monitoring for a description of the BMPEP.

#### *Application of Hillslope Effectiveness Monitoring Findings*

PALCO and the wildlife agencies will identify recurring successes and problems with the PALCO Aquatics Conservation Plan effectiveness on the hillslope by 1) conducting annual reviews of the hillslope effectiveness monitoring reports, 2) hillslope inspections, and 3) audits of monitoring procedures. Problems with hillslope effectiveness may lead to modification of prescriptions through adaptive management.

**Instream Effectiveness Monitoring**— The overriding objective of **instream** effectiveness monitoring in the PALCO Aquatics Conservation Plan is to determine, in a timely manner, whether the prescriptions applied to the hillslope are effective in protecting and improving the condition of aquatic resources. If prescriptions are not effective, this should be determined by **PALCO** and the agencies, and the prescriptions should be modified through adaptive management as soon as possible to prevent unanticipated adverse effects.

**Instream** effectiveness monitoring provides a means for assessing how individual prescriptions and management regimes as a whole are effective in protecting and restoring aquatic values. **Instream** effectiveness monitoring complements hillslope monitoring by providing a further basis for **determining** whether the prescriptions applied on the hillslope, including in riparian zones, effectively control the rates and types of watershed inputs to waters. Because **instream** conditions integrate all watershed inputs, however, relating measurements of **instream** conditions to the effectiveness of individual prescriptions may be **difficult** (MacDonald and others, 1991). Nevertheless, carefully designed **instream** effectiveness monitoring intended to **answer** specific questions can provide information that PALCO and the agencies can use to modify prescriptions and adapt management regimes to better protect water quality and aquatic species and their habitats.

**Instream** effectiveness monitoring, in contrast to trends monitoring, should be carried out as close as possible to where the impact mechanisms on the hillslope are at play. **Instream** effectiveness monitoring should occur in tributary waters, higher up in watersheds, or in locations intimately linked to hillslope processes. Monitoring conducted in such locations holds the greatest promise for establishing timely feedback mechanisms through which PALCO and the agencies can identify which prescriptions or procedures are not effective in protecting and restoring aquatic values and then modify them through adaptive management.

### 6.3.5.2.7 Instream Monitoring Approach

PALCO will develop and implement, with the oversight and concurrence of the agencies, **instream** monitoring approaches for two contexts: 1) watersheds where watershed analysis has not been completed and 2) watersheds which have been or are the subject of watershed analysis. PALCO, in consultation with the agencies, will design general **instream** effectiveness monitoring approaches for the former using a combination of the **following: baseline** information compiled for the PALCO Aquatics Conservation Plan, other information as it becomes available through watershed studies, resources inventories and **monitoring** conducted or mandated by public agencies (e.g., CDFG, RWQCB, CDF, and others), input from resource

professionals familiar with conditions in the local watersheds, and the public living in or near the watersheds to be monitored. While designing the approaches for **instream** effectiveness monitoring in watersheds subject to watershed analysis, **PALCO** and the agencies will use these same information sources; however, the **instream** effectiveness monitoring designs will benefit from the focused watershed-specific assessments and syntheses that are integral components of watershed analysis. **PALCO** will iteratively use these insights gained from the watershed analysis assessments and syntheses to design **instream** effectiveness monitoring elsewhere.

#### 6.3.5.2.8 **Instream** Effectiveness Monitoring Objectives

All monitoring should be for the purpose of achieving **focused** objectives, answering specific questions, or testing well-considered hypotheses. This is particularly true for **instream** effectiveness monitoring. The following are examples of mechanistic null hypotheses that illustrate the types of questions **PALCO** will **answer** through its **instream** effectiveness monitoring program:

**Hypothesis- There is** no significant increase in streambank instability and scouring of Class III waters with gradients greater than three percent by the end of the first winter period after clearcutting through the application of Class III EEZ prescriptions.

**Hypothesis-** There is no **significant** (less than 20 percent) increase in turbidity in Class II waters from the inflow of Class III waters adjacent to high-lead, cable-yarded **clearcut** harvest units through the application of the aquatic strategy Class III EEZ prescriptions.

**Hypothesis-** There is no significant decrease in residual pool volume in Class I and Class II waters tributary reaches with gradients less than three percent **after** clearcutting and high-lead cable yarding through the effectiveness of **RMZ** widths in holding materials transported from shallow-seated landslides in check.

**Hypothesis—** There is no significant reduction of overstory tree canopy in Class II **RMZs** from wind throw after commercial thinning because of pre- and post-harvest tree stocking or **RMZ** widths, or both, reducing wind-related depth-of-edge effects.

**Hypothesis-** There is no **significant** increase in summer (mid-July to mid-September), late afternoon average maximum temperatures measured in pools in Class I waters because low water temperatures are maintained in contributing Class II waters.

These examples of hypotheses to be tested through **instream** effectiveness monitoring illustrate how carefully questions have to be developed before designing and implementing **instream** effectiveness monitoring. They point to the need to establish criteria for determining what is significant (e.g., less than 20 percent), to clearly describe what exactly is to be monitored (e.g., turbidity vs. suspended sediment) and to specify where and when monitoring will occur (e.g., in Class III tributaries with gradients greater than three percent contributing to Class II waters from mid-July to mid-September in late afternoon). **The** hypotheses are stated in mechanistic terms to help ensure that the monitoring is directed toward investigating the linkages between prescriptions applied to the hillslope and **instream** conditions. **They** also suggest how testing one hypothesis through monitoring might lead to another, through an accumulative method of inductive inference. By employing such a process of strong inference (Platt 1964), **PALCO** and the agencies will clarify which prescriptions of the aquatic strategy are inadequately holding impact mechanisms triggered by management activities in check.

PALCO will develop these types of hypotheses and the **instream** effectiveness monitoring **strategies** with the participation of the watershed analysis team members and agencies. Where the watershed analysis process has not **been** initiated, PALCO and the agencies will develop sets of hypotheses to be tested through **instream** effectiveness **monitoring**. **These** hypotheses are informed by the experiences gamed where watershed analysis has been completed elsewhere in the region. In both **circumstances, the actual** hypotheses to be tested will be determined by the salient circumstances, management regimes, and prescriptions specific to each hydrologic unit. Finally, PALCO and the agencies will establish a peer review panel to bring in interdisciplinary expertise to critique **monitoring** proposals on an annual basis, if necessary.

#### 6.3.5.2.9 Application of **Instream** Effectiveness Monitoring Findings

PALCO and the agencies will use the results from the annual reviews of **instream** effectiveness monitoring to modify prescriptions that are **identified** as ineffective in protecting and restoring aquatic resources through the adaptive management process. At the same time, insights gamed from this monitoring will **confirm** what prescriptions are working well. The changes in prescriptions will be designed to fit **specific** circumstances and impact mechanisms. For example, **instream** effectiveness monitoring might indicate that unacceptable increases in turbidity in Class III waters occur on certain soils **after** the adjacent stands on slopes greater than 50 percent have been clearcut, yarded by high-lead cable, and broadcast burned. This may lead to PALCO modifying, among other items, the timing of timber operations, the regeneration and yarding methods, and the level of vegetation retained within **EEZs** under these circumstances. If, under otherwise similar circumstances, **instream** effectiveness monitoring suggests that little or no increase in turbidity is found when the adjacent hillslopes are subject to intermediate treatments (e.g., commercial thinning), then the management regime and prescriptions would be retained until the emergence of evidence to the contrary. The monitoring activity should continue long enough, however, to ensure that the prescriptions are being tested under a wide range of conditions, including large but infrequent storm events.

#### 6.3.5.3 Trend Monitoring

According to MacDonald and others (1991), trend monitoring implies a process where measurements are made at regular, well-spaced time intervals to determine a long-term trend in a particular parameter. This type of monitoring typically is not intended **to** evaluate specific management practices (as is the case with effectiveness monitoring). The results of trend monitoring, however, can corroborate the **findings** of effectiveness monitoring. Conversely, they can indicate changes at different time and spatial scales than those by which effectiveness monitoring indicates changes. Trend monitoring can also serve to indicate whether watersheds as a whole are on a long-term trajectory of recovery from both natural and management-related perturbations.

#### **Adaptation of the Current Trend Monitoring Program to the PALCO Aquatics**

**ConservationPlan—** PALCO already has a significant trend monitoring program in place on its lands. The company has installed 52 permanent sampling stations. At each-station, aquatic macroinvertebrates, fine sediments, substrate size, and crown cover are measured. **In** addition, stream bed surveys and measurements of continuous temperature and LWD are conducted at a subset of the 52 stations. Details of the data collection/analysis efforts associated with this program are as follows:

- Aquatic macroinvertebrates are collected using methods in the California stream **bioassessment** procedures (CDFG, March 1996). This methodology involves sampling riffle habitats using a kick net. Collected invertebrates are preserved in the field. In the laboratory, the samples are subsampled, and the first 300 **invertebrates** identified to family, and, where possible, to genus. The samples are being identified by Lauck, Lee and Lauck Inc. Their results are used to calculate **abundance** (if less than **300**), species richness (i.e., number of **taxa**), and the Simpson and Hilsenhoff diversity indices.
- Bulk sediment samples are being used to **assess** the percentages of the **sediments** (less than **0.85mm** and less than **4.7mm**) as indicators of suitability for salmon spawning. PALCO is using the shovel sample technique as described in "Field Comparison of Three Devices Used to Sample Substrate in Small Streams," by Grost and Hubert, 1991. Collected samples are processed by CDFG under contract to the company.
- Pebble counts are being used to calculate the median and 34th percentile sediment size (e.g., D50 and **D84**). These sediment measures can be tracked over time to determine whether sediments in a watercourse are generally becoming coarser or **finer**, relative to both sediment loading rates and cumulative effects **from** management activities. Pebble counts are being collected using the method described in "**Stream** Reference Sites," by Harrelson et al., 1994.
- Measurements of water temperature over the summer are taken with continuous recording thermometers (Hobos or Stowaways). In addition, point measurements of temperature are taken during most other monitoring activities. Temperature data are used to calculate the maximum weekly average temperature (**MWAT**).
- Canopy cover (percent) is being used to identify areas that may be subject to higher thermal loading (e.g., from sunlight) and to document regrowth of riparian areas harvested in the past. Measurements are taken using a spherical densimeter using methods in Flosi and Reynolds, **1996**.
- Streambed surveys are being conducted to determine how **streambed** elevation is changing over time. This, in turn, is related to both sediment and LWD loading to waters. The methods for these surveys were developed by Dr. Bill Trush (Humboldt State University) in cooperation with the Simpson Timber Company. The method involves measuring the elevation of the channel thalweg using an engineers' level and permanent benchmarks that can be used to compare results among survey periods. PALCO has also begun measuring channel cross sections using permanent benchmarks to track changes in channel width/shape over time.
- As part of the stream bed surveys, PALCO is measuring the abundance (i.e., the percentage of channel length composed of pools), **size**, and depth of pools within each study reach.
- LWD is being measured because of its value in creating fish habitat and to assess how much LWD recruits from riparian buffers along the stream. The diameter, length, and location of all LWD pieces in the thalweg mapping segments **are** being recorded yearly.

Although not currently a part of **PALCO's** trends monitoring program, PALCO intends to collect data on fish abundance, turbidity, and discharge in the future. For fish, **PALCO** will establish a number of survey reaches across the ownership. Where possible, these reaches **will** be selected to correspond to locations already being measured for the trends monitoring variables noted

above. These survey reaches will be assessed twice yearly, during the summer (July to August), and again during the spawning season (the timing of which will vary from year to year). Summer surveys will be conducted using electrofishing, underwater observation, seining, angling, or other methods, as appropriate, although preference will be given to quantitative methods if they are feasible. Spawner surveys will primarily be conducted using visual observation techniques, although trapping, seining, or angling may be used to collect individual **fish** for measurement, identification, or radio tagging.

Turbidity measurements were recommended in a review of PALCO's monitoring program prepared for EPA by Bandy Klein (Klein 1997). Although expensive compared to other sampling efforts used in PALCO's monitoring program, Klein's review suggested that turbidity could be an effective way to determine whether **fine** sediment inputs to waters are increasing or decreasing over time. The company proposes to establish pilot turbidity monitoring stations. Results **from** this pilot program will be used to determine how and where to expand the program.

Historically, the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) measured stream discharge at a series of stations on or adjacent to PALCO's land (e.g., **Freshwater** Creek, Larabee Creek). PALCO provided financial support for reestablishment of a gaging station on the Elk River and intends to continue operation of this gage. The company is also considering establishment of gaging stations on Freshwater Creek, Yager Creek, and possibly in one or more of the smaller watersheds draining into the Eel River (e.g., Bear Creek). This monitoring effort would also be relatively expensive. PALCO and the agencies' decision on where to undertake this program will be made in the future based on the results of the Elk **River** pilot study and watershed analyses conducted there and in other hydrologic units.

PALCO recognizes that new data or scientific studies and the **findings** of watershed analysis will result in future identification of other variables that would be valuable to monitor. Therefore, at their discretion, PALCO and the agencies will add to the list of monitoring variables outlined here at a later date.

Klein (1997) discussed the distribution of monitoring sites on PALCO's lands, and suggested installation of additional monitoring sites. PALCO agrees that some portions of its lands, for example, the Elk River drainage, have few monitoring sites relative to their land area. In part, this is a result of statistical chance, as many sites were chosen using randomization techniques. However, it is also true that the company made the decision to intensively survey the **Freshwater** and Lawrence creek basins to more accurately assess the potential impacts of its forest practices. PALCO intends to continue this intensive approach to sampling in these basins, especially given concerns over the potential for cumulative effects. However, the company also anticipates adding new monitoring sites to **fill** any gaps in its coverage. Selection of specific sites will be included as part of the watershed analysis process the company will conduct on its lands.

PALCO and the agencies will review the current 52 monitoring locations and activities. They will confirm that the original intent underlying the selection of locations and **instream** parameters to be measured is consistent with the monitoring needs of the Aquatics Conservation Plan and follow the guidelines for monitoring found in the HCP Handbook (1996). This review will address and respond to comments from the public and local watershed specialists regarding PALCO's current trend monitoring effort. PALCO and the agencies will provide important details regarding monitoring objectives and hypotheses, sampling, and

measurement methodologies, monitoring locations and distribution, **frequency** of sampling, and statistical analyses. These cannot be finalized and disclosed at this time, but **must** await the findings of watershed analysis, further quantitative and qualitative resource assessment and analysis (i.e., for the interim, for those hydrologic units where watershed analysis is not yet completed), or both. As stated in the HCP Handbook (1996), trend monitoring measures will be “as **specific** as possible and be commensurate with the project’s scope and the severity of its effects.” Further, PALCO and the agencies will develop target milestones for the life of the HCP for key **instream** parameters. These will necessarily be specific to each hydrologic unit, as their development **must** be informed and conditioned by prevailing physical conditions specific to each hydrologic unit.

As a further assurance that **PALCO’s** trend monitoring program will follow the guidelines of the HCP Handbook (1996) and show clear trend information on the condition of waters in watersheds **affected** by implementation of the Aquatics Conservation Plan, PALCO and the agencies will establish a peer review panel comprised of scientists, resource professionals, and the public living in and near the hydrologic units to be monitored. The panel will review the initial trend monitoring strategies developed by PALCO and the agencies and will provide recommendations for improvements. The peer review panel will validate that appropriate questions are being asked and that the proposed monitoring strategies are practicable and will give answers and management directions. The ultimate form of the trend monitoring will be approved by the reviewing agencies through the watershed analysis process.

#### 6.3.5.3.1 Application of Trend Monitoring Findings

As stated above, **trend** monitoring alone is not an appropriate tool to evaluate the responses of watersheds and waters to specific management practices. This form of monitoring can, however be used to assess whether hillslope and **instream** attributes and functions are leading toward or away from properly functioning conditions and recovery. With the oversight of the agencies through annual reviews and the THP review process, PALCO will use the results of trend monitoring as part of the cumulative effects analyses in watershed analysis. In turn, PALCO will, where appropriate, effect watershed-specific modifications in management regimes to reverse trends that lead way from properly functioning aquatic habitat conditions, or will modify management restrictions to be more flexible for the company, when appropriate, through the watershed analysis prescription process or adaptive management.

#### 6.3.6 Adaptive Management

Adaptive management will **be** used to change elements of the Aquatics Conservation Plan in response to a determination of the effectiveness of current elements of the conservation plan for protecting and restoring stream conditions and fish populations. Thus, the effectiveness of the conservation plan is assessed by **examining** conditions on **PALCO’s** ownership and determining if management is maintaining or achieving, over time, properly functioning aquatic habitat conditions.

Changes in elements of the conservation plan are warranted if information from watershed analysis, monitoring, any scientific studies conducted as part of the Plan, or any other source show that properly functioning aquatic conditions are not being maintained. **The** following circumstances would warrant change:

- If the Plan is not substantially moving the aquatic habitat towards achieving properly functioning habitat conditions

- If a more cost-effective technique exists to attain the same biological or physical outcome
- If the information shows that PALCO can gain flexibility in the prescriptions and still attain properly functioning conditions
- Adaptive management is the means to ensure that the conservation plan maintains or achieves, over time, the habitat goal of a properly functioning aquatic condition.

PALCO may, at any time, propose changes to elements of **the** aquatics conservation plan that are not in conflict **with AB** 1986 as part of adaptive management. At PALCO's request, any such changes proposed by PALCO shall be promptly reviewed by the peer review panel established pursuant to Section 3.1.3.1 (**k**) of **the** Implementation Agreement. PALCO and, if applicable, **the** peer review panel, shall provide to the Wildlife Agencies a written evaluation as to whether the proposed changes will impair the ability of the aquatics conservation plan to maintain or achieve, over time, properly functioning aquatic habitat conditions. The Wildlife Agencies will consider PALCO's proposed changes, **the** peer review panel's written evaluation, if any, and other available information. The Wildlife Agencies shall approve PALCO's proposed changes that are not in conflict **with AR** 1986 unless **they** find, in writing, that PALCO's proposed changes will impair **the** ability of the aquatics conservation plan to maintain or achieve, over time, properly functioning aquatic habitat conditions.

## 6.4 BALD EAGLE CONSERVATION PLAN

### 6.4.1 Management Objectives

1. Implement nest site **identification** and protection measures that have a high probability of providing for successful nesting of bald eagles.
2. Minimize disturbance of foraging bald eagles.

### 6.4.2 Conservation Measures

#### 6.4.2.1 Surveys

1. Focused surveys for bald eagle nests shall be conducted for **THPs** located within 0.5 mile of Class I waters that provide potential foraging habitat. Potential nesting habitat (old-growth or residual forest with trees more than 40 inches in diameter) within THP areas and out to 0.5 mile from their boundaries shall be surveyed during the breeding season immediately prior to beginning operations. Operations shall not start until surveys have been completed.
2. Surveys for eagles and their nests shall be conducted between March 1 and April 15. Surveys shall consist of at least three site visits, one of which shall occur after April 1. Thorough searches of the survey area shall be conducted for eagles and their nests. Repeated float trips down Class I waters that provide potential foraging habitat or surveys conducted by airplane or helicopter to search for adult birds and nests may be necessary. All surveys conducted by helicopter or airplane will be designed with the assistance of the wildlife agencies to avoid the possibility of disturbing eagles at unknown nest sites.
3. If bald eagles are observed during surveys, additional **visits** shall be conducted to determine if eagles are nesting within a THP area or within 0.5 mile of the THP

boundary. This determination may be aided by observing the eagle's behavior, location, and direction of flight. Plan operations shall not commence until surveys have been completed, and the results of any positive surveys have been reviewed and approved by USFWS and CDFG.

4. Although most **bald** eagle nests are likely to occur within 0.5 mile of foraging habitat, they could potentially occur anywhere in the Plan Area where nesting habitat is suitable. Therefore, all **THPs** shall be evaluated for the existence of suitable nesting habitat and localized searches for nests and eagles shall be conducted as appropriate.
5. Documentation (i.e., survey forms and written summary) of field surveys performed for **THPs** shall be provided to USFWS and CDFG annually.
6. Field personnel shall be trained to recognize bald eagle nests and other signs indicating their presence, and shall be directed to report all sightings of eagles or nests to **PALCO's** wildlife biologist.

#### 6.4.2.2 Nest Site Protection Measures

1. Active nest trees shall be defined as a tree used by **bald** eagles for nesting at least once within the previous five years. If inadequate data exist to document the status of individual nests, they shall be considered to be active. Occupied nests shall be defined as nests currently being used by bald eagles for reproduction. This shall include territorial behavior by one or more adults in the vicinity of a known nest, nest construction, egg laying, incubation, or rearing of young.
2. No trees within 500 feet of an active bald eagle nest shall be cut without prior consultation and concurrence **from** the USFWS and CDFG. Harvest within the 500-foot radius will be limited to prescriptions which will enhance long-term eagle habitat; such as precommercial or commercial thinning, selection, or an alternate prescription.
3. Timber operations including helicopter yarding, shall not occur closer than 0.5 mile from occupied nests during the breeding season (January 15 through August 15, or post-fledging). Blasting or pile driving activities shall not occur within one mile of occupied nests. Disturbance **buffers** may be modified with consultation and concurrence by USFWS and CDFG based upon topographic and other site-specific and project-specific circumstances. Disturbance buffers may also be lifted through monitoring and a determination that the site is not occupied, that nesting is not occurring, that it has failed, or that the young have fledged.

#### 6.4.2.3 Mitigation for Disturbance of Foraging Eagles

1. Skyline cables over Class I waters shall be marked to reduce the possibility of collisions when operating in or adjacent to known bald eagle foraging habitat.
2. Winter foraging by bald eagles on the PALCO ownership is **currently known** to occur between November and February, but is uncommon. Implementation of the aquatic strategy, specifically measures to reduce disturbance in **CMZs** and Class I **RMZs** and restrictions on winter use, construction, reconstruction, and **storm**-proofing of roads are expected to effectively minimize the potential for disturbance.

boundary. This determination may be aided by observing the eagle's behavior, location, and direction of flight. Plan operations shall not commence until surveys have been completed, and the results of any positive surveys have been reviewed and approved by USFWS and CDFG.

4. Although most **bald** eagle nests are likely to occur within 0.5 mile of foraging habitat, they could potentially occur anywhere in the Plan Area where nesting habitat is suitable. Therefore, all **THPs** shall be evaluated for the existence of suitable nesting habitat and localized searches for nests and eagles shall be conducted as appropriate.
5. Documentation (i.e., survey forms and written summary) of field surveys performed for **THPs** shall be provided to USFWS and CDFG annually.
6. Field personnel shall be trained to recognize bald eagle nests and other signs indicating their presence, and shall be directed to report all sightings of eagles or nests to **PALCO's** wildlife biologist.

#### 6.4.2.2 Nest Site Protection Measures

1. Active nest trees shall be defined as a tree used by **bald** eagles for nesting at least once within the previous five years. If inadequate data exist to document the status of individual nests, they shall be considered to be active. Occupied nests shall be defined as nests currently being used by bald eagles for reproduction. This shall include territorial behavior by one or more adults in the vicinity of a known nest, nest construction, egg laying, incubation, or rearing of young.
2. No trees within 500 feet of an active bald eagle nest shall be cut without prior consultation and concurrence **from** the USFWS and CDFG. Harvest within the 500-foot radius will be limited to prescriptions which will enhance long-term eagle habitat; such as precommercial or commercial thinning, selection, or an alternate prescription.
3. Timber operations including helicopter yarding, shall not occur closer than 0.5 mile from occupied nests during the breeding season (January 15 through August 15, or post-fledging). Blasting or pile driving activities shall not occur within one mile of occupied nests. Disturbance **buffers** may be modified with consultation and concurrence by USFWS and CDFG based upon topographic and other site-specific and project-specific circumstances. Disturbance buffers may also be lifted through monitoring and a determination that the site is not occupied, that nesting is not occurring, that it has failed, or that the young have fledged.

#### 6.4.2.3 Mitigation for Disturbance of Foraging Eagles

1. Skyline cables over Class I waters shall be marked to reduce the possibility of collisions when operating in or adjacent to known bald eagle foraging habitat.
2. Winter foraging by bald eagles on the PALCO ownership is **currently known** to occur between November and February, but is uncommon. Implementation of the aquatic strategy, specifically measures to reduce disturbance in **CMZs** and Class I **RMZs** and restrictions on winter use, construction, reconstruction, and **storm-proofing** of roads are expected to effectively minimize the potential for disturbance.

### 6.4.3 Monitoring

Nest sites for which buffers are established shall be monitored during the breeding season each year the THP is in effect and for at least one breeding season following completion of the plan. Annual reports describing monitoring efforts shall be provided to the USFWS and CDFG. These reports shall disclose the dates of surveys, identity of surveyors, survey methods, and results (nest condition, occupancy rates, and nesting success).

At five-year intervals, PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG shall meet to review the results of monitoring activities and to evaluate implementation and effectiveness of measures and potential procedural improvements.

## 6.5 PEREGRINE FALCON CONSERVATION PLAN

### 6.51 Management Objectives

Implement nest site **identification** and protection measures which have a high probability of providing for successful nesting of peregrine falcons.

#### 6.5.2 Conservation Measures

##### 6.5.2.1 Surveys

Surveys of potential nesting habitat (i.e., at Scotia **Bluffs**, Holmes **Bluff**, or any other location where suitable cliffs over 70 feet in height occur) shall be conducted within THP areas and within 0.5 mile of their boundaries if operations will occur during the breeding season (January 15 to August **15**). This distance shall be increased to one mile for projects involving blasting or pile driving activities. Surveys **shall** follow the guidelines in Page1 (**1992**), Protocol for Observing Known and Potential Peregrine Falcon Eyries in the Pacific Northwest, any year operations will occur.

1. Field personnel shall be trained to recognize **peregrines** and potential nesting habitat.
2. Documentation (i.e., survey forms and written summaries) of field surveys performed for **THPs** shall be provided to USFWS and CDFG annually.

##### 6.5.2.2 Nest Site Protection Measures

1. No trees within 500 feet of an active peregrine falcon nest shall be cut without prior consultation and concurrence from USFWS and CDFG.
2. To minimize disturbance, timber operations shall not occur closer than 0.5 mile from occupied nests during the breeding season. Blasting, pile driving, helicopter yarding, or similar activities (other than ambient conditions) capable of introducing loud noise shall not occur within one mile of occupied nests.
3. Disturbance buffers may be modified with consultation and concurrence by USFWS and CDFG based upon topographic and other site-specific and **project-specific** circumstances. Disturbance buffers may also be modified through monitoring and a determination that the site is not occupied, that nesting is not occurring or has failed or that the young have fledged. Surveys shall follow the **guidelines** in Page1

(19921, "Protocol for Observing Known and Potential Peregrine Falcon **Eyries** in the **Pacific** Northwest."

### 6.5.3 Monitoring

Nest sites for which buffers are established shall be monitored during the breeding season each year the THP is in effect and for at least one breeding season following completion of the plan. Annual reports describing monitoring efforts shall be provided to USFWS and CDFG. These reports shall disclose the dates of surveys, identity of surveyors, survey methods, and results (nest condition, occupancy rates, and nesting success).

At five-year intervals, PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG shall meet to review the results of monitoring activities and to evaluate implementation and effectiveness of measures and potential procedural improvements.

## 6.6 WESTERN SNOWY PLOVER CONSERVATION PLAN

1. Avoid impacts to western snowy plover nesting on gravel bars.

### 6.6.1 Conservation Measures

PALCO will conduct reconnaissance-level surveys (as described in U.S. Army Corps of Engineers [USACE] gravel extraction permits for the area) on gravel bars above the Rio Dell bridge. If reconnaissance level surveys locate plovers above the Rio Dell bridge, full protocol surveys will be instituted on all gravel bars within one mile of the sighting. If snowy plovers are detected, the individual(s) shall be observed for evidence of nesting behavior. If a nest site is discovered, a **1,000-foot** seasonal operations buffer will be applied until the end of the breeding season (March 24 to September **15**), until it is determined that the nest has failed, or until nesting has been completed.

If PALCO acquires rights to gravel bars on the Eel River downstream **from** the Rio Dell bridge, those bars shall be surveyed in full compliance with the USFWS protocol existing at the time, and nest protection measures implemented will be consistent with measures used in the Eel River area at the time. If the species' breeding range is determined by any means to extend up the Eel River to the Rio Dell bridge, PALCO shall begin full protocol surveys of gravel bars above the Rio Dell bridge and, if nests are located, implement nest protection measures as above. PALCO **shall** evaluate proposed gravel extraction levels with respect to potential indirect effects downstream. Within three years of permit issuance, PALCO and the agencies will meet to evaluate indirect effects of extraction on downstream gravel bars and to determine whether practicable mitigation measures would be appropriate.

## 6.7 BANK SWALLOW CONSERVATION PLAN

### 6.7.1 Management Objectives

1. Avoid impacts to bank swallow nesting colonies on streambanks and hillsides.
2. Prevent nest colony establishment in stock-piled sand associated with **instream** mining operations.

### 6.7.2 Conservation Measures

Aquatic conservation measures, principally the **CMZ** and **RMZ** measures, will minimize potential disturbance to nesting colonies.

Where new road construction crossing low gradient Class I waters is planned, and potential bank swallow habitat exists, PALCO shall survey the proposed alignment during the nesting season, once in May and once in June to identify any nest colonies within 200 feet of the construction area. These surveys shall be separated by at least one week. If nest colonies are found, PALCO shall consult with USFWS and CDFG to jointly develop, and **PALCO** shall implement, measures which shall maintain the nest colony.

Activities that may indirectly impact or disturb active nest colonies shall be separated by at least a **200-foot buffer** during May and June. Alternative mitigation measures may be developed through consultation with USFWS and CDFG.

PALCO shall attempt to prevent bank swallows from nesting in stock-piled sand associated with **instream** mining operations by using netting or other means developed in consultation with USFWS and CDFG.

### 6.7.3 Monitoring

When conservation measures 2 or 3 are implemented, PALCO shall monitor the nest colony each year that the covered activity operates within 300 feet of the site and for one year following cessation of operations. Monitoring **shall** be conducted to determine the approximate dates that the colony is established and abandoned, and the approximate number of adult birds and to document any indication that disturbance adversely affects success of the colony. Documentation (i.e., survey forms and written summary) of field surveys **shall** be provided to USFWS and CDFG annually. Locations of **identified** colonies shall be reported by PALCO, within 90 days of discovery, to the CDFG NDDB.

At five-year intervals, PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG shall meet to review the results of monitoring activities and to evaluate implementation and effectiveness of measures and potential procedural improvements.

## 6.8 PACIFIC FISHER CONSERVATION PLAN

The conservation strategy for this species is a combination of a habitat-based approach and an additional structural component element. **Specifically**, the silvicultural requirements associated with **RMZs**, mass-wasting avoidance strategy, cumulative **effects/disturbance** index restrictions, marbled murrelet conservation areas, and the retention standard of 10 percent late **seral** habitat for each WAA are likely to provide for **denning** and resting habitat for Pacific fishers.

### 6.8.1 Management Objectives

Maintain enough suitable habitat to contribute to a sustainable population of Pacific fishers in the coastal province of northern California.

### 6.8.2 Conservation Measures

Retention of late seral habitat on the ownership through the life of the permit is expected to provide **sufficient** habitat in terms of quantity, quality, and distribution to contribute to a viable

population. **CMZs** and **RMZs** are expected to provide connectivity across the landscape. In many locations, **CMZs** and **RMZs** will intersect with other **RMZs** or be augmented by habitat subject to silvicultural restrictions (e.g., NSO activity sites, mass-wasting sites, or steep slopes adjacent to **RMZs**). These areas, **MMCA**s, and adjoining public lands will form an interconnecting network of habitat which is expected to provide opportunities for **denning** and resting sites in the Humboldt, Yager, and Van **Duzen WAAs**. PALCO land within the Bear, **Mattole**, and Eel **WAAs** is not expected to provide blocks of late seral habitat through the life of the permit. Late seral and old growth habitat on public lands adjacent to PALCO ownership in these two **WAAs** is expected to provide suitable habitat for the species.

The conservation measures to retain and recruit habitat structural components within and outside of **RMZs** across the ownership are expected to provide older forest legacies in younger stands when these stands reach a mid-successional **seral** stage. These legacy components are expected to provide suitable substrate for Pacific fisher denning and resting sites.

### 6.8.3 Implementation/Compliance Monitoring

**Seral** stage distribution will be tracked and reported as described in the conservation measures described in this appendix under Section 6.11, Measures to Conserve Habitat Diversity and Structural Components.

### 6.8.4 Effectiveness Monitoring

Within one year of permit issuance PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG will jointly develop a forest carnivore survey methodology. The objective will be to determine the extent of Pacific fisher use of habitat types and seral stages present on PALCO lands.

The research/monitoring project will begin by the end of the second year after permit issuance. Five years **after** starting the research monitoring project, PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG shall meet to review the results of surveys and potential additional research needs.

## 6.9 RED TREE VOLE CONSERVATION PLAN

The conservation strategy for this species has a habitat-based approach. Specifically, the silvicultural requirements associated with **RMZs**, mass-wasting avoidance strategy, cumulative effects/disturbance index restrictions, marbled murrelet conservation areas, and the retention standard of 10 percent late seral habitat for each watershed assessment area are likely to provide habitat for red tree voles.

There is little published literature available on habitat use and population status or trend of red tree voles in California. Anecdotal information from several sources in northern California (CDFG, 1997) suggests a broader habitat usage than previously documented for red tree voles in Oregon. Additional information on habitat use is needed for this species.

### 6.9.1 Management Objective

Sustain viable red tree vole populations within each watershed assessment area on the PALCO ownership, through the life of the permit.

### 6.9.2 Conservation Measures

Late seral habitat retention on the ownership, through the life of the permit, **is** expected to **provide sufficient** habitat in terms of quantity, quality, and distribution to support a viable

population. **CMZs** and **RMZs** are expected to provide connectivity across the landscape. In many locations, **CMZs** and **RMZs** will intersect with other **RMZs** or be augmented by habitat subject to silvicultural restrictions (e.g., NSO **activity** sites, mass-wasting sites, or steep slopes adjacent to **RMZs**). These areas, **MMCA**s, and adjoining public lands will form an interconnecting network of habitat which is expected to maintain the species in the Humboldt, **Yager**, and Van **Duzen WAAs**. PALCO land within the Bear, Mattole, and Eel **WAAs** is not expected to provide blocks of late seral habitat through the life of the permit. Late seral and old growth habitat on public lands adjacent to PALCO ownership in these **WAAs** is expected to provide suitable habitat for the species.

### 6.9.3 Implementation/Compliance Monitoring

Seral stage distribution will be tracked and reported as described in the conservation measures described in this appendix under Section 6.11, Measures to Conserve Habitat Diversity and Structural Components.

### 6.9.4 Effectiveness Monitoring and Adaptive Management

Within one year of permit issuance, PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG will jointly develop a research/monitoring effort to examine red tree vole habitat seral stage use and habitat connectivity requirements on PALCO lands. The objective will be to determine conditions needed in younger forests to provide for and promote opportunities for maintaining tree vole populations capable of interbreeding and dispersing to other suitable habitats. Survey methodology will be based on the draft study plan developed by the Pacific Northwest Research Station (**Biswell**, 1997).

The research/monitoring project will begin by the end of the second year after permit issuance. Five years after starting the research monitoring project, PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG shall meet to review the results of monitoring/research activities and any other new information available on the species. Analysis of the habitat considered to be capable of supporting red tree vole populations will include an assessment of total acreage and habitat connectivity based on available information on the dispersal capabilities of the species. This information will be used to evaluate the effectiveness of conservation measures and evaluate potential changes to the measures. If PALCO, USFWS, and CDFG cannot reach consensus on changes necessary for the OCP, USFWS, and CDFG may terminate coverage for the California red tree vole under the ITP.

## 6.10 AMPHIBIAN AND REPTILE CONSERVATION PLAN

### 6.10.1 Management Objectives

Sustain viable populations of the northern red-legged frog, foothill yellow-legged frog, tailed frog, southern torrent salamander, and the western pond turtle within each watershed assessment area in which they occur on the PALCO ownership, through the life of the permit.

### 6.10.2 Conservation Measures

Conservation measures outlined in the Aquatics Conservation Plan are expected to provide for sustainable populations of these species where suitable habitat types occur across PALCO's ownership. This plan outlines interim habitat protection measures for aquatic and adjacent

**riparian** habitats, as well as **upslope** management practices that are designed to reduce impacts to aquatic resources.

As **part** of the watershed analysis process, an amphibian and reptile assessment module shall be developed. The module will include key and critical questions regarding life history requirements, including those **upslope** of the RMZ boundaries. It will be part of every watershed analysis conducted under the Plan. Results from this module shall be integrated into synthesis and prescription development to minimize and mitigate management effects on all phases of life history. **Refer** to the Aquatics Conservation Plan for additional information.

### 6.10.3 Monitoring

**Refer** to the Aquatics Conservation Plan for a description of the implementation/compliance and effectiveness monitoring.

## 6.11 MEASURES TO CONSERVE HABITAT DIVERSITY AND STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS

### 6.11.1 Management Objective

#### 6.11.1.1 Habitat Diversity

Ensure that a mix of vegetation **types** and seral stages are maintained across the landscape over the permit period.

#### 6.11.1.2 Structural Components

Maintain and recruit sufficient amounts and distribution of forest structural components to contribute to the maintenance of wildlife species covered under the ITP.

### 6.11.2 Conservation Measures

#### 6.11.2.1 Habitat Diversity

At the end of each five-year period, PALCO will report the seral stage distribution for each hydrologic unit to gauge conformity with projected forest seral types for the plan area described in the **final** SYP, as approved by CDF, and demonstrate compliance with the following measure in the HCP:

Throughout the **planning** period, **PALCO's** forested lands within each **WAA** will include at least 10 percent late seral, 5 percent mid-successional, 5 percent young forest, and 5 percent forest openings.

#### 6.11.2.2 Habitat Structural Components

- **All** snags (standing dead trees) that do not constitute a safety hazard to workers will be retained during timber harvest.
- At a minimum, the following numbers of snags (conifer and hardwood) shall remain averaged over the THP area following timber harvest and site preparation (larger snags may be substituted for smaller snags):
  - 1.2 snags per acre over 30 inches dbh and over 30 feet tall
  - 2.4 snags per acre over 20 inches dbh and over 16 feet tall
  - 1.2 snags per acre over 15 inches dbh and over 12 feet tall

- Snags in **RMZs** adjacent to harvest units may be counted toward the objective, but at least half the snags in each **size** category must be outside Class I and II **RMZs**.
- If snags are not present to meet the above objective, green trees in the same size categories shall be retained in numbers **sufficient** to meet the objective. Conifer species other than redwood shall have priority for retention. Green trees identified as replacement trees for snags shall be retained during subsequent timber harvest entries through the permit term.
- In the event of an emergency (as described in Section 1052.1 of the **FPRs**), such as **wildfire** or pest or disease outbreak, the requirement for retention of **all** snags may be waived through consultation with and approval by USFWS and CDFG.
- Retain at least four live cull trees per acre that do not constitute a **safety** hazard outside of Class I and II **RMZs**. Trees 30 inches dbh and trees with visible defects such as broken tops, deformities, or cavities will have priority for retention. Live cull trees may include trees with merchantable logs. These trees shall be retained during subsequent timber harvest entries through the permit term so long as they do not constitute a **safety hazard**.
- All live hardwood trees over 30 inches dbh that do not constitute a safety hazard will be retained following timber harvest and site preparation, to a maximum of two per acre. Hardwoods within all **RMZs** count towards this objective.
- Two logs per acre greater than 15 inches in diameter and over 20 feet long will remain following timber harvest and site preparation. One of these logs per acre must be in decay class **1, 2, or 3** (Maser and Trapp, **1984**). Hollow logs over 30 inches in diameter will have priority for retention. Logs in Class I and II **RMZs** will not be counted toward this objective. There **will** be no requirement to leave down logs where they do not exist currently unless results of the first five years of monitoring indicate management objectives are unlikely to be met.
- Snag, live cull, hardwood, and down log conservation measures shall apply to **THPs**, timber harvest exemptions, and notice of emergency timber operations and will be evaluated based on the average number measured over a 40-acre harvest unit.

### 6.11.3 Monitoring

#### 6.11.3.1 Implementation/Compliance

Due to the current lack of information regarding quantity and quality of snags and downed logs, monitoring is a key component of this strategy. Monitoring will develop data on these habitat components for each HU of the **PALCO** ownership.

- During preparation of **THPs**, the RPF (or designee) shall gather information on presence of snags, down logs, hardwoods, and live culls for inclusion in the habitat component monitoring process described below.
- Monitoring of snags, live culls, hardwoods, and downed logs will occur during reforestation inspections, timber stand improvement monitoring, or timber stand cruises. This monitoring program may be altered in the future, but any alterations made must conform to the standards set forth here, and those developed in consultation with USFWS and CDFG.
- A training **program** for **RPFs**, wildlife and fisheries biologists, **licensed** timber operators, and all other technicians responsible for implementing this strategy will

be designed and implemented. PALCO will work with USFWS and CDFG in developing the training program.

- At the end of the first year of plan implementation, PALCO will meet with the USFWS and CDFG to review the data collection and monitoring procedures and to determine if they are effective in producing the information required to implement the snag and downed log measures. Changes in procedures, if necessary, will be developed by PALCO in cooperation with USFWS and CDFG.

#### 6.11.3.2 Effectiveness Monitoring and **Adaptive** Management

To ensure that the HCP measures will be effective in achieving the desired level and distribution of snags and down logs, PALCO shall conduct the following:

- **After** five years of plan implementation, the **effectiveness** of the recruitment measures will be evaluated against the objectives based on monitoring results and following an intensive inventory and **measuring** of stand components. If the snag objectives are not being met through the recruitment procedures identified above, PALCO will develop and implement aggressive measures. Such measures may include additional marking and retention of recruitment trees, girdling and inoculation of trees with pathogens to accelerate mortality and decay, or modification of site preparation techniques.
- In addition to the snag and down log inventories conducted during reforestation inspections, timber stand improvement monitoring, and timber stand cruises, a random sampling methodology will be developed in consultation with USFWS and CDFG and implemented on a **5- to 10-year** basis throughout the life of the permit. This sampling design will follow the framework described in Volume 3, Part E, of the July 1998 Draft HCP for timber volume estimates.
- There will be no requirement to leave down logs where they do not exist currently until results of the first five years of monitoring have been evaluated. If the down log objectives are not being met through the recruitment measures **identified** in the HCP above, PALCO will develop and implement additional measures in consultation with USFWS and CDFG.
- The HCP monitor shall have full access to **PALCO's** land, at all times, to inspect any covered activity and shall be present **onsite** during every timber harvest conducted by or on behalf of PALCO. The HCP monitor shall also, at the request of the wildlife agencies, monitor the effectiveness of the HCP measures for retaining and recruiting structural components of wildlife habitat.

### 6.12 CONSERVATION PLAN FOR SENSITIVE PUNTS

#### 6.12.1 Several Measures Necessary to Avoid Significant Impacts to Plants

Presence of rare species will be determined through field surveys conducted during planning of covered activities including, but not limited to, development of **THPs**, planning for new road construction, and development of quarries or borrow pits. The list of potentially occurring rare species (Table 3.9-4 of the **FEIS/FEIR**) will be updated each year by PALCO, using available information from CDFG, USFWS, NDDB and the **California** Native Plant Society (**CNPS**) inventory. Copies of this list shall be forwarded to CDFG, USFWS and CDF upon completion. For convenience, the term "rare" shall be used in subsequent text to refer to species listed as

endangered, threatened or rare, and additional species not yet formally designated by any government but which meet the criteria for listing (i.e., CNPS lists **1A**, **1B**, or **2**).

The following procedures will be followed to provide a high probability that rare plants are discovered during the planning stage for covered activities and that mitigation necessary to avoid jeopardy and reduce impacts to a level which is not significant is accomplished.

1. Within 90 days of ITP issuance, a **qualified** botanist retained by PALCO shall review the plants identified in the July 1998 Draft HCP in Volume 1, Table 3, List B Species and Table 3.9-4 of the **FEIS/FEIR**. Based upon existing information, the botanist shall determine which habitat **types/plant** communities occurring within the covered lands may support these species.
2. Once the habitat types potentially supporting these species have been identified, a description or guide **shall** be prepared by the botanist and PALCO biologists to assist **PALCO** employees and contractors in identifying the presence of these habitat types when performing covered activities. These habitat guides may include text, photographs, lists of associated species, drawings, maps, and other resources identified by the botanist. These guides shall be submitted to USFWS and CDFG for review, comment, and **final** approval.
3. Within 12 months of issuance of the ITP, PALCO shall train **RPFs** and other appropriate employees and contractors in the use of the habitat guides to recognize potential habitat for rare plant species.
4. When **planning** covered activities, PALCO employees and/or contractors shall identify potential habitat that may be **affected** by a covered activity, PALCO shall retain a qualified botanist to verify the habitat determination and perform a survey, at the time of year appropriate to identify the subject species and at an intensity **sufficient** to detect presence of the target species.
5. Results of these surveys shall be included with any **THP** submitted to CDF for the subject project. The results shall also be submitted to USFWS and CDFG as part of **PALCO's** annual report and if requested by either of the agencies.
6. When rare plant species are detected in habitat that may be **affected** by a covered activity, PALCO shall implement feasible measures to avoid, minimize, and/or mitigate significant adverse effects to such species. These measures may include, but are not limited to, **buffers**, adjusting the location of covered activities, employing alternative methods of conducting covered activities (e.g., rerouting roads, narrowing roads, and using tractor or helicopter yarding). PALCO shall consult with USFWS for federally listed species and CDFG for all rare plant species. Such measures may be developed and proposed by PALCO, but they must be approved by USFWS, as appropriate, and CDFG. For **THPs**, USFWS, as appropriate, and CDFG shall recommend to CDF all feasible measures to avoid, minimize, and/or mitigate significant adverse effects, and CDF shall require one or more of such measures **sufficient** to provide such protection.
7. PALCO shall report locations of **identified** populations of rare plant species to the NDDDB within 90 days of discovery.

## 6.13 THP CHECKLIST AND HCP MONITOR

PALCO resource professionals preparing **THPs** and timber harvest exemptions and agencies conducting the environmental review of PALCO's plans will be guided by the "Pacific Lumber Company Timber Harvest Plan Checklist." The checklist will be used to confirm that all relevant elements of the OCP are contained in the **THPs** and made enforceable under the **THPs**. PALCO and the wildlife agencies will revise the checklist during watershed analysis to create a THP checklist for each watershed to ensure implementation of watershed-specific prescriptions.

To monitor compliance with, and the effectiveness of, each of the **OCPs** above, PALCO shall fund a third-party entity or entities to monitor PALCO's implementation of the HCP OCP. This entity or entities shall be approved by the wildlife agencies to **monitor** on behalf of the wildlife agencies, is known as the HCP monitor, and shall operate under contract to CDFG. The HCP monitor shall also monitor the effectiveness of the Plan, if directed to do so by the wildlife agencies. The HCP monitor shall be **qualified** in forestry, **fisheries** biology, and wildlife biology. The HCP monitor shall have full access to PALCO's land at all times to inspect any covered activity and shall be present **onsite** during every timber harvest conducted by or on behalf of PALCO.

The HCP monitor shall report immediately to designated representatives of the **wildlife** agencies and CDF any deviations by PALCO from the conservation and management measures provided for under the HCP OCP. The wildlife agencies and CDF may then take appropriate action to enforce the federal permit and state permit, the California Forest Practice Act, and other applicable federal and state laws. The HCP monitor shall also report quarterly to the wildlife agencies concerning implementation and compliance by PALCO.

The intensity of the compliance monitoring by the HCP monitor will be reevaluated by the wildlife agencies at the end of the **first 10-year** period following the effective date of the HCP, and every 10 years thereafter, based on PALCO's record of compliance during the prior **10-year** period.

## 6.14 ST-ED ALTERATION AGREEMENT

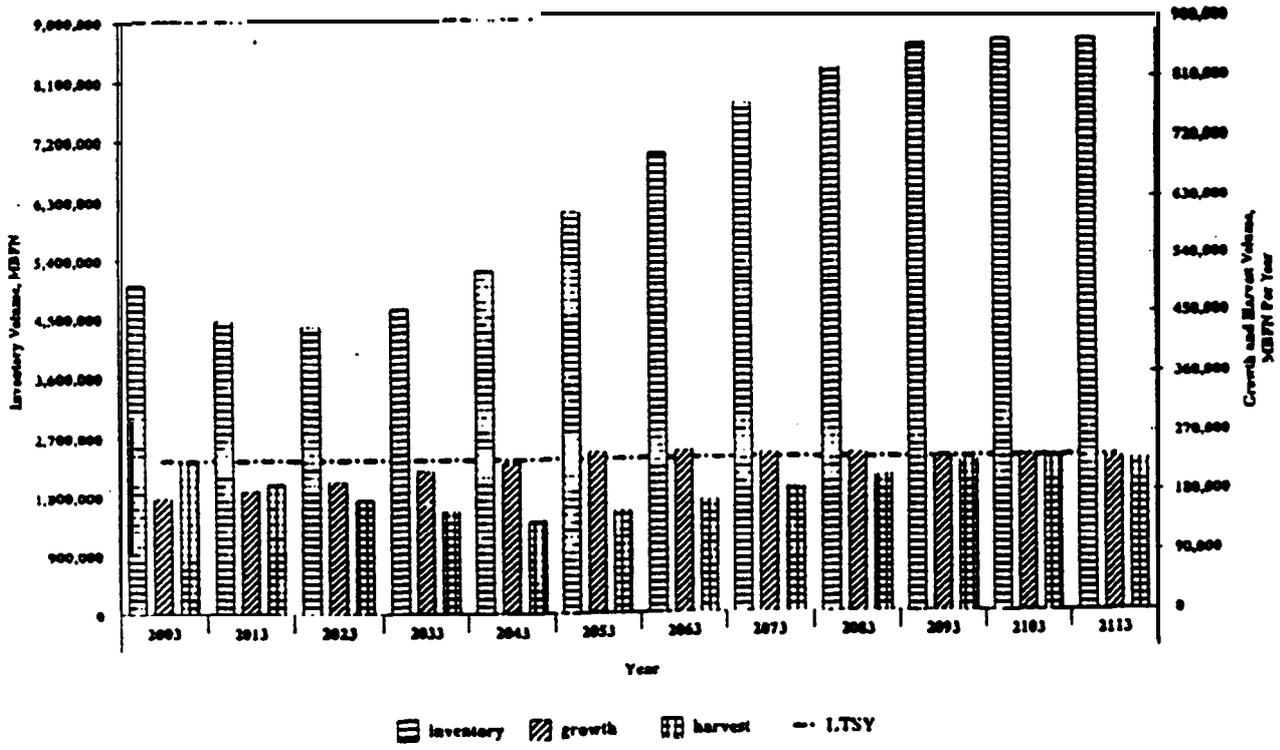
Specific covered activities are subject to a streambed alteration agreement with CDFG, which is attached as Exhibit B to the IA. PALCO must comply with the terms and conditions of the streambed alteration agreement, which shall be administered and enforced by CDFG.

## **7 IMPACTS OF THE HCP ON COVERED SPECIES**

Impacts of the HCP on covered species are discussed in Chapter 3 of the **FEIS/FEIR**. Refer to Tables 8 through 10 and Figures 5 and 6 for a summary of effects on vegetation and **RMZs**.



Figure 6  
Inventory, Growth, and Harvest per Decade



**Table 9. Projected Forest Seral Types in Class II WLPZs by Decade for the Plan Period (acres)**

Seral Type	Decade												
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Non-timber	342	342	342	342	342	342	342	342	342	342	342	342	342
Prairie	105	105	105	105	105	105	105	105	105	105	105	105	105
Forest Opening	415	1	1	1	1	1	1	22	4	9	1	1	1
Hardwood	366	288	73	13	6	5	65	45	48	164	222	225	221
Young Forest	2,467	3,068	<b>2,040</b>	819	312	122	126	101	456	349	126	40	21
Mid-successional	7,834	8,047	8,632	9,788	9,024	8,541	6,583	4,630	3,672	3,365	3,244	2,988	2,811
Late Seral	4,667	4,475	5,331	5,477	6,756	7,438	9,332	11,310	11,928	12,220	12,514	12,854	13,054
Old Growth	670	540	343	322	321	312	312	312	312	312	312	312	312
Total	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866	16,866

**Table 10.** Projected Forest Seral Types for the Plan Area by Decade for the Plan Period (acres)

Seral Type	Decade												
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Forest Opening	12,616	30,615	38,175	<b>31,269</b>	31,879	23,179	16,012	19,226	18,460	25,590	28,921	24,091	21,732
Young Forest	38,502	54,062	<b>67,115</b>	74,443	67,661	58,066	66,199	52,453	41,725	49,407	45,546	55,857	58,575
Mid-successional	87,772	80,499	75,468	76,050	81,315	99,298	96,027	102,205	<b>113,422</b>	94,645	98,576	85,214	77,030
Late Seral	53,236	32,433	18,105	17,710	<b>18,793</b>	19,129	20,973	25,442	25,743	29,675	26,191	34,010	41,886
Old Growth	6,444	3,864	3,564	3,295	2,983	2,965	2,136	2,136	2,136	2,136	2,136	2,136	2,136
Hardwood	4,266	1,362	409	68	204	198	1,489	1,373	<b>1,350</b>	1,382	<b>1,465</b>	<b>1,528</b>	<b>1,477</b>
Prairie	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832	3,832
Non-timber	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038	5,038
<b>Total</b>	<b>211,706</b>	<b>211,705</b>	<b>211,703</b>	<b>211,705</b>	<b>211,705</b>	<b>211,705</b>	<b>211,706</b>	<b>211,705</b>	<b>211,706</b>	<b>211,705</b>	<b>211,705</b>	<b>211,706</b>	<b>211,706</b>

## 8 FUNDING

PALCO has years of experience conducting wildlife surveys and biological monitoring for species under-FESA and CESA. **PALCO** also conducts monitoring to ensure compliance with other statutory and regulatory regimes, particularly the California Forest Practices Act and the **FPRs** of the California Board of Forestry. This compliance and effectiveness monitoring work has been done by various in-house biological and technical **staff** as well as by outside, independent contractors. PALCO has undertaken this monitoring and surveying under a wide variety of circumstances across its 200,000 acres of commercial timberland. In addition, PALCO has over one year of experience conducting **stormproofing** of its roads and landings, with dedicated crew and equipment, as described in the HCP. These experiences have provided PALCO with the information and background necessary to evaluate and estimate the costs that will be associated with compliance and effectiveness monitoring and **stormproofing** across the landscape.

**PALCO** has evaluated its labor, equipment, and related administrative and data management costs so as to realistically plan and budget for the compliance and effectiveness monitoring and **stormproofing** requirements integral to this HCP. The expenses are anticipated to be approximately \$2 million annually. This estimate is based on the anticipated costs of compliance and effectiveness monitoring for all mitigation and minimization measures now included within the HCP and the out-of-pocket costs for road and landing **stormproofing**.

Compliance monitoring is currently accomplished in a wide variety of ways, using primarily in-house **staff** associated with THP preparation, forestry fieldwork, road maintenance and improvement, timber reinventorying, remote sensing and mapping, and similar land management efforts. Because this work is often done in connection with other planned and budgeted activities, it has been accomplished at very modest, if any, increased cost factors. However, for purposes of the Final HCP, cost and **planning** estimates have been based upon work by an independent compliance **monitor(s)** and will entail compliance efforts not currently required, or not formally reported to wildlife agencies on a regular or periodic basis. Efforts such as tree retention **verification**, road maintenance checking, plot surveying, and evaluation can be accomplished with a minimal **staff**. Annual or periodic reporting in accord with the Final HCP will take additional time and represents a **significant** portion of the expense. Compliance monitoring costs are evaluated at rates generally paid to forestry technicians, consulting foresters, and other technically trained and experienced consultants. Considering all these factors, it is reasonable to estimate that the compliance monitoring component of the HCP will cost approximately \$250,000 per year.

In some instances, an independent compliance monitor may be asked or required to perform monitoring or measures included in the HCP that are more appropriately considered effectiveness monitoring. Because these activities are yet uncertain at best, they are not definitively subject to evaluation and cost planning. Utilizing a conservative cost factor equivalent to that anticipated for independent compliance monitoring, the annual cost would be expected to be approximately \$250,000 per year.

Road stormproofing will comprise by far the most significant financial cost. The additional conservation **and** mitigation measures included in the Final HCP have increased the anticipated costs. Road stormproofing may require out-of-pocket expenditures as high as \$20,000 per mile in rare cases where significant drainage and erosion control reconstruction or

other engineered work must be undertaken, over and above road and landing surface treatments. This amount has been used to estimate maximum expenses for planning and budgeting purposes. Because the **final** agency requirements in this HCP provide for stormproofing 75 miles of road per year, the worst-case **maximum** cost could approach \$1.5 million per year.

In light of these considerations, a security of \$2 million is adequate for securing the compliance monitoring, effectiveness monitoring, and road stormproofing requirements in the **HCP's** OCP. PALCO shall post security to CDFG within 15 days of the effective date of the ITP. The security may be a pledged savings or trust account, certificate of deposit, irrevocable letter of credit, or other form approved by the wildlife agencies. The **security** will automatically be renewed annually and replenished as necessary to the amount of \$2 million until PALCO completes its obligations under the **ITPs**.

The amount of security shall also be increased annually by the amount, if any, that PALCO was required to pay the prior year in liquidated damages to the state of California pursuant to a separate agreement entitled "Agreement Relating to Enforcement of AB 1986." If, in an immediately preceding year, PALCO was not required to pay any liquidated damages, the amount of security would return to \$2 million, as adjusted for inflation in accordance with the Consumer Price Index (**CPI**) published by the Bureau of Labor Statistics of the U.S. Department of Labor. Such security may be used to secure PALCO's obligation under the AB1986 agreement. However, in the event that the state of California and any of the wildlife agencies simultaneously call upon the security, such security shall first serve the purposes of the wildlife agencies under this agreement.

PALCO has, and will expend, such funds as may be necessary to **fulfill** all of its conservation management obligations under the **ITPs** as described in the **HCP's** OCP and the IA. The funding sources that PALCO will use to fulfill its permit obligations will include income derived **from** PALCO's covered activities on the covered lands. By February 1 of each year the **ITPs** are in effect, PALCO shall submit, concurrently with its submission of the annual report, an annual budget with regard to its obligations under the HCP, approved by its Board of Directors, to the wildlife agencies, demonstrating that **sufficient** funds to carry out PALCO's commitments under the **ITPs** for that fiscal year have been authorized for expenditure. PALCO will promptly notify the wildlife agencies of any material change in PALCO's funding resources. A material change in PALCO's funding resources is any change in the financial condition of PALCO which will adversely **affect PALCO's** ability to manage the covered lands in accordance with the terms of this Agreement and the **HCP's** OCP.

PALCO will provide the **first** annual budget covering the period immediately following permit issuance up to the end of the **first** calendar year of operation within 15 days of the effective date of the ITP.

## **9 OTHER REQUIREMENTS**

Another measure necessary for purposes of the Plan is execution of the **IA** by the wildlife agencies, PALCO, and CDF. The IA is included in the **FEIS/FEIR** as Appendix S.

**Attachment 1: Volume II, Part B - PALCO Ownership by Assessor Parcel Number**

<b>Parcel Number</b>	<b>Parcel Number</b>	<b>Parcel Number</b>	<b>Parcel Number</b>
20001102S	10315205	10702502	20501134
20001104S	10316101	10702601	20502101
20401203	10316102	10702606	20502102
20601108	10316103	10703102	20502103
31107302	10316201	10703201	20502124
31108102S	10316202	10703301	20503117
31108201	10316203	10703401	20503121
31108202	10316205S	10703501	20503123
31108302S	10316206S	10703602	20503124
31109101S	10316207	10704102	20503150
31109102	10317103	10704103	20503151
31109203	10317204	10704104	20503152
31404303	10318104	10704105	20504140
31404401	10318105	10704201	20505101
31405101S	10318106	10704301	20505102
31405201	10318203	10704402	20505103
31405202S	10318206	10704501	20505106
31405303S	10318207	10722307	20505108
31405402S	10319203	20001105	20505110
31405403	10326203	20001106	20506102
31405405	10327202	20001107	20506103
31406101	10327203	20001109	20506104
31406104S	10328101	20001110	20506107
31406403S	10328201	20001116	20506111
10212203	10129101	20001117S	20507105
10215205	10329105	20001118	20524101
10301103	10329201S	20203101	20526106
10301104	10329202s	20203102	20531101
10301105	10329203	20219101	20531102
10301106	10329204	20220101	20531104
10301108	10420103	20221102	20532102
10301109	10420202	20401101	20532106
10301202	10421105	20401202	20532121
10301203S	10421106	20401301S	20532128

Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number
10301205	10421109	20401302	20532133
10302102	110421110	120402101	120532135
10302202	110421111	120402102	120533101
110303202	110421211	20402201	20533102
10303203	10618130	20402202S	20533103
10303206	10618134	20402301	20533104
10303207	10619103	20402302S	20533105
10313103	10619106	20403101	20533106
10314208	10620105	20403305	20533107
10315101	10701101	20403307S	20534101
10315102	10701203	20403403	20534102
10315103	10702104	20405202	20534103
10315201	10702201	20405203	20534104
10315202S	10702301	20405204	20534105
10315203	10702402	20405205	20534106
10315204	10702501	20414101	20534107
20534108	20612102	20721101S	20920103
20534111	20612103	20721102	20920104
20534112	20612104	20721202	20920107
20534118	20612105	20721203	20920108
20601104	20612117	20721303	20920110
20601105	20612118	20721304	20920112
20601106	20612120	20721305	20921103
20601107	20612121	20721401	20921105S
20602101	20613101	20722103	20921106
20602102	20613102	20723103	20921107
20602103	20613103	20723104	20921108
20602104	20613104	20723105	20921109
20602105	20614107	20723107	20921110
20602106	20616101	20723110	20921111
20602107S	20617104	20723201	20921112
20603102	20617109	20723202	20921113
20603103	20619109	20723203	20923108
20603104	20619117	20723204	20925101
20603105	20626201	20723206	20925102
20603106	20626203	20723207	20925103
20603108	20626204	20723209	20926101
20603109	20626205	20723301	20926102
20604101	20626207	20813503	20926103
20604102	20626209	20813504	20926104
20604114	20626210	20814101	20927104
120605112	120626213	120814102	20927105

Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number
20605113	20626220	20814110	20927113
20605116	20627101	20814111	20927114
20605118	20627102	20814209	20927115
20605119	20627104	20814301	20928104
	20627105	20814303	20928108
20605122	20627106S	20814304	20928109
20605123M	20627113	20814305	20935117
20605126	20627114	20907101	20935124
20605127	20627115	20907103	20935138
20606104	20627117	20907104	20935170
20606105	20627120	20907108	20935181
20606106	20627122	20908121	20936101
20606107	20627123	20908122	20936116
20606116	20627125	20908126	20937101
20606121	20627126	20916206	20937102
20606122	20628104S	20918103	20937103
20606123	20629112	20919101	20937104
20606124	20705602	20919102	20938103
20606125	20708101	20919103	20938105
20607101S	20708201	20919104	20938106
20607102	20708602	20919111	20938107
20607103	20712106	20919112	20938110
20610101S	20712601S	20919113	20938112
20610118	20712603	20920101	20938115
20610133	20712604S	20920102	20938116
20939101	21 104202S	21145104	31403401
20939102	21104203	21145105	31403402S
20939103	21104301	21145201	31403501
20939109	21104302S	21145202	31403503S
20939110	21104303	21145204	31403601
20939111	21104304	21145302	31404101
20939114	21104305	21145303	31404202
20939115	21105303	21145304	131404301
20939116	21106101	21145305	31404601
20939117	21106201	21146101	31405302S
20939118	21106202	21146204	31405404
20939119	21106203	21147101	31406203S
20939120S	21106204	21147201	31406204
20939121	21106205	21148107	31406205
20939122S	21106301	21149105	31406301S
20940101	21106304	21149106	31406402S
20940102	21111103	21149108	31407101

Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number
20940110	21111203	21149201	31407201
20940115	21113313	21149202	31407304
20940116	21113401	21150101	31407401
20940119S	21126101	21150201	31407503S
20940120	21127103	21150202	31407504
20940123	21127104	21150203	31407505
20940125	21127202	21150204	31407601
21101102	21127203	21150302	31407602S
21101103S	21127301	21150303	31407603
21101105	21127302	21155304	31408101
21101201S	21127304	21701101	31408201
21101202	21127405	21701201	31408301
21101204	21127506	21701202	31408407
21101205	21127512	21701301	31408408
21101301	21127607	21701302S	31408501
21101302	21127608	21701409	31408601
21102302	21128201	30401104	31408602S
21102402	21128204	31106201	31409101
21103101	21128208	31109202	31409201
21103102	21129201	31401101	31409301
21103103	21129301	31401201	31409303
21103104	21129401	31401301	31409401
21103201	21129501	31401401	31409501
21103203	21130201	31401501	31409601
21103204	21130304	31401601	31410101
21103301	21130305	31402101	31410205
21103302	21130306	31402201	31410501
21103303	21130401	31402301	31410601
21104101	21130501	31402401	31411104
21104102	21131101	31402501	31411202
21104103	21131112	31402601	31411205
21104104	21145101	31403101	31411304
21104105	21145102	31403201	31411401
21104201	21145103	31403301	31411502
31412132	40532104	10707302	20502106
31413125	40532105	10707303	20502123
31413128	40532111	10707304	20503149
31413132	40532114	10707502	20505109
31413139	40532115	10707505	20506112
31416103	40604105	10707601	20521211
31416601	01711103	10707605	20521226
31417101	01711104	10722401	20521230
31418101	07734101	10722417	20521234

Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number
31418402	07734102	20002104S	20521236
31418505	10012105	20002108S	20521243
31418609	10013104	20002109S	20521247
31428102	10129108	20002114	20522101
31428104	10129110	20003201S	20532103
31428202	10301107	20005207S	20532132
31428203	10301204	20005211	20532134
31428204	10328103	20005306S	20534119
31428205	10411105	20006209	20535101
31428301	10416103	20036306	20535102
31429101S	10416104	20036307	20535116
31429102	10416105	20041106	20535118
31429201	10416106S	20043119	20535119
31429301	10416107S	20108207	20603107
31432104	10416108S	20109106	20610116
40312102	10416109	20109226	20610131
40312103	10416206S	20109227	20610132
40314103	10416207	20109229Y	20619114
40314104	10416212	20133102	20619116
40403102	10419210	20133104	20626206
40403103	10419213S	20133105	20626211
40403104	10421104	20201123	20627107
40413108	10421203	20201131	20627112
40508146	10615101	20202105	20628102
40508147	10615103	20202110	20628103S
40509102	10615106	20202117	20635104
40510102	10701402	20202201	20708601
40522116	10701403	20205102	20908120
40524131	10701506	20403201	20913104
40524132	10704202	20403202S	20914104
40524133	10704203	20403302	20914105
40529102	10704502	20403306S	20914106
40529103	10704601	20403402	20914107
40530102	10704602	20412104	20914108
40530103	10704604	20412105	20914201
40531110	10704605	20412106	20914202
40531112	10704609	20421134	20919108
40531113	10707101	20421135	20920111
40531114	10707201	20423109	20935171
40531115	10707202	20425101	20935172
40531116	10707203	20425110	20935180
140531117	10707301	20438120	20936113

Parcel Number	Parcel Number	Parcel Number
21101104	21720222	31413151
21113207	21720223	31413164
21113208	21720225	31413165
21113209	21720226	31413176
21113307	21735103	31414112
21113309	21737111	31414202
21113312	22215201	31414203
21113402	22215203	31414301
21114103	22215205	31414304
21126104	22215206S	31414401
21127303	22215302	31414402
21127510	30401103	31414501
21127516	30515101	31414502
21127611	30515102	31414607
21127615	30519101	31415201
21128307	30519102	31415205
21128308	30701108	31415303
21130502	30713135	31415401
21130611	30801101	31415402
21135201	30801102M	31416604
21135203	30801102S	31417103
21136103	30801202M	31417104
21137304	30801202S	31417105
21137402	30802101	31417301
21137403	30803101	31417601
21137503	30803202	31418602
21138318	30803203	31433304
21138319	30803204	40219103
21149209	30803205	40223108
21149212	31101106	40224114
21155204	31101107	40228104
21229113	31101108	40229107
21411410	31103104	40310145
21630302	31104107	40311121
21630407	31105102	40412112
21631701	31106101	40413116
21631702	31111109S	40516108
21718116	31111302S	40517103
21719212	31111401S	40518104
21720107	31406103S	40527103
21720108	31408302	40528108
21720110	31413107	40532113
21720217	31413131	50112120
21720220	31413134	51623110
21720221	31413150	51623111

## **Attachment 2: Volume II, Part E - Assessment of Watershed Disturbances and Recovery**

### **Purpose, Background, and Approach**

To evaluate and minimize the level and impact of land-use-related disturbances in managed watersheds on the ownership, **specifically** as they relate to accelerated erosion and sediment yield. To estimate the current disturbance regime and to predict future levels of disturbance and recovery based on harvest planning scenarios contained in the sustained yield model.

### **Background**

Land use activities often **result in** the alteration of natural physical and biological watershed attributes. The nature, severity, and persistence of site disturbances resulting from land use activities are often **difficult** to quantify, because they are functions of several variables, including **1)** the type of land use activity, **2)** where in the watershed the land use activity is conducted, **3)** how well the activity is done, and **4)** the natural geomorphic **sensitivity** of the landscape. These factors make **quantification difficult**. For this reason, normalized, numerical disturbance coefficients can be used to track and predict relative land disturbance within watersheds. The coefficients are used as first-cut estimates of land disturbance as they relate to probable mechanisms for initiating watershed and stream channel response, specifically related to erosion and sedimentation problems. The initial selection of land disturbance coefficients relies on interdisciplinary professional judgment, and values can be refined based on known site conditions, field observations, published values, and aerial photographic analysis.

### **Approach**

Disturbance coefficients can be developed to express the effect of land use on such variables as woody debris recruitment, hillslope stability, sediment flux, and changes in watershed hydrology. A land use disturbance index has been developed that, when combined with a watershed sensitivity index, provides a relative measure of the potential effects of land use on the geomorphology and, by inference, on the aquatic resources of each drainage basin in the ownership. Ground disturbance, for this analysis, is considered as one measure of the potential for initiating erosion and sedimentation problems in managed watersheds. **In** general, the greater the ground disturbance of an operation, the greater the likelihood there will be resulting erosion and sediment yield to stream channels.

### **Tasks**

The determination of relative levels of watershed disturbance, for these purposes, is a fairly straightforward procedure involving the identification of harvest management practices (yarding techniques and silvicultural methods) and the application of multipliers to identify which areas have been disturbed to the greatest degree. Thus, yarding operations involving tractors and other ground skidding equipment are the most likely to cause the greatest unit ground disturbance (soil displacement/acre). They are also most likely to have haul roads located in the more sensitive lower slope positions. In contrast, unassisted helicopter yarding is likely to cause the least soil disturbance of modern yarding methods, and haul roads are normally located on ridge-tops where erosion and sediment problems are less likely to occur. Similarly, the greater the silvicultural intensity, the greater the chance that soil loss will occur. Thus, clear cutting is more likely to produce more land disturbance and increase the potential for soil movement and erosion, than a commercial thinning operation on the same terrain, all else being equal.

The calculation procedure outlined in this report provides a simple method to evaluate the relative landscape disturbance caused by a variety of yarding and silvicultural methods in a watershed. The numbers have no concrete meaning except in their relative relationship to one another. Taken together, they provide a relative index of the degree of management-related disturbance in a watershed and, therefore, provide a useful assessment and predictive tool for land use planning.

Finally, land use disturbances and their effects tend to diminish over time. Recovery rates for vegetation are comparatively rapid in coastal watersheds, and surface erosion on disturbed soils diminishes quickly after the first few years. For simplicity, **10-** and **20-year** recovery periods were selected for analysis, depending on the availability of harvesting history data and yarding information (see discussion **onsite** recovery, below).

How much disturbance is too much for a particular watershed depends on a variety of factors. These include watershed sensitivity (see Geomorphic Sensitivity analysis [PALCO, 1998], the location of the disturbance, the type of disturbance, its duration and its age. Thus, disturbance is important not only in its magnitude, but also where it occurs, its aerial extent (relative to streams and other sensitive locations), when it occurs, and the time period over which it occurs. These are all factors that relate to its effect on erosion and sedimentation problems in a watershed.

### Uses and limitations

There are several methods available to reduce the potential adverse effects of land use in a geomorphically sensitive watershed. Since natural watershed sensitivity cannot be easily altered, these measures either entail **1)** the use of **modified** land use practices to reduce the level of watershed disturbance related to land use activities **from** one watershed to the next, or **2)** employing remedial or corrective measures to improve conditions associated with past activities.

**Modified land use practices**— The first type of measures is accomplished during project planning (by such techniques as avoidance of problem areas, special project layout, and special or restrictive design), during project implementation (by such things as operator and equipment selection and special operating practices), and during the post-project phase (using special remediation and erosion prevention practices). Numerous mitigation measures and best management practices can be employed to reduce site-specific watershed impacts. These often go beyond the requirements of existing regulation and are employed to provide an added measure of protection to sensitive watersheds within the ownership.

**Remedial measures**— Secondly, remedial measures can also be employed to reduce the potential for adverse effects from land use in sensitive watersheds. These measures might include road upgrading and **stormproofing** (surfacing, out-sloping, drainage improvement, etc.), road decommissioning (planned closure, either temporary or permanent), erosion control work, landslide **stabilization**, and stream channel improvement projects. PALCO is currently employing a variety of these measures on a site-specific basis, and their use is expanding as heavy equipment is upgraded and personnel are trained.

### Site Recovery

Most areas disturbed by land use tend to return towards their natural state over time, depending on the nature and magnitude of the disturbance. Some land use, such as road construction, will continue to have some effect for as long as the feature exists in the watershed.

In reality, recovery is probably a non-linear process in nature, and some elements which influence geomorphic recovery are episodic, like the climatic events that control much of **landform** development. An example of the non-linear recovery is the change in root shear strength following clear cutting of **Douglas-fir** forests. Foot strength drops off in a non-linear decline for a number of years following harvest, but then picks up again as the root systems from the young second-growth forest begin to reestablish.

Similarly, surface erosion of bare soil areas does not diminish in a linear fashion, but probably increases following disturbance, then drops off exponentially as an armor develops and vegetation is reestablished. Different geomorphic settings and processes also recover at **different** rates. Thus, surface erosion may return close to background within several years, but heavily aggraded stream channels may take decades to flush their stored sediment and recover their natural morphology. Many erosional processes are controlled (driven) by episodic hydrologic events and their recovery is dependent on the magnitude and frequency of storms following the initial disturbance.

The lack of data required to develop accurate curves for various components of watershed recovery and the complexity of watershed recovery processes limit the use of non-linear recovery models. Instead, a linear recovery model is often used to estimate the overall duration of watershed impacts **from** land use. Because revegetation rates are very high **in** most coastal watersheds PALCO owns, a simple linear recovery model was selected with which to evaluate watershed recovery over time. Rapid revegetation and resprouting help reduce both landslide risk and surface erosion rates, and they mask the subtle non-linear recovery processes that might be more apparent in dryer and higher inland watersheds.

Site recovery is affected by several variables and can refer to both recovery from past practices and recovery **from** future land use activities. Natural recovery from past land use depends on the nature of the land use (e.g., an old road with Humboldt crossings, which wash out slowly, or culverted crossings, which wash out comparatively quickly), the time elapsed since land use, and the frequency and magnitude of storms which have occurred in the watershed since the disturbance. Certain **types** of storm-triggered erosion and sedimentation problems can occur a decade or more **after** the initial land use disturbance. Recovery **from** past land use can be dramatically accelerated through a program of problem identification and implementation of erosion prevention work such as that being conducted in **PALCO's** "road armoring" program.

The nature and duration of effective site recovery **from** future land use are also dependent on a number of variables, including operator care, project location, the magnitude and frequency of post-project storm events, revegetation rates, and other factors. For example, vegetative recovery (from a hydrologic perspective) is likely to be much more rapid within the coastal influence area than for areas further inland. Effective hydrologic recovery may take 30 years or more in inland watersheds or in areas dominated by rain-on-snow events, but be much quicker in low elevation coastal watersheds.

Other factors are also likely to be important in **determining** recovery rates, including the type and location of disturbance. For example, surface erosion can be expected to diminish rapidly in the first few years following disturbance in the wet coastal region. Similarly, ridge-top disturbances (e.g., ridge roads) are less likely to result in significant impacts to the aquatic system (compared to **midslope** or lower slope roads), and overall recovery **from** this **type** of "distant" disturbance will be relatively rapid.

## Conclusions

Developing a simple disturbance index for the ownership allows PALCO to evaluate the relative magnitude of present watershed disturbance in context with the existing aquatic conditions of our streams. It is a tool that will help PALCO evaluate past practices and take steps and make improvements anywhere conditions may have deteriorated to unacceptable levels. It is also a tool that allows PALCO to predict the outcome of future forest management activities (harvesting and yarding) suggested by the sustained yield plan.

Perhaps more importantly, a relative disturbance index for forest practice activities on the property can be used in conjunction with the watershed sensitivity assessment to broadly guide future land management in a fashion that minimizes disturbance to potentially sensitive terrain and thereby reduces the potential for accelerated erosion and sediment yield to streams. It is a planning tool that will be most successful when used in conjunction with the broad array of on-the-ground watershed protection and recovery practices now being implemented.

## SYP/HCP Disturbance Index

The primary assumptions underlying the disturbance index (DI) developed for the SYP/HCP are as follows:

- **Different** types and combinations of timber management activities and yarding methods produce different levels of sediment.
- Sediment production from a given **activity** diminishes over time.

As in the ERA approach, each type of silvicultural **activity** was assigned a disturbance rating that reflected the **intensity** and duration of its effects (Table 1). In general, the greater the ground disturbance, the greater the risk of erosion and sediment yield and the higher the disturbance rating. In this regard, the DI and **ERA** ratings are very similar. However, the DI is customized to give a higher disturbance rating than the ERA approach to tractor yarding. In addition, instead of treating roads as a separate factor, the DI correlates roads with the yarding methods.

As in the ERA approach, the DI also considers the decline of impacts over time, with the DI using a **10-year** time factor and ERA using 30 years. It must be emphasized, however, that neither the DI nor the ERA time lines should be construed as being the actual time to recovery. In both approaches, the time factor allows for comparative analysis of cumulative impacts **from** proposed activities. **Further**, a **10-year** DI time factor was selected for reasons connected to **SYP** planning and implementation. PALCO has detailed information on silvicultural activities for the past ten years (1986 to 1996), and that information can be used to calculate a baseline DI for the plan area. The baseline DI in turn can be used as a point of comparison for impacts from activities under the LTSY projection (presented in **10-year** intervals).

To calculate the DI for a given area (e.g., PALCO lands within a WAA or the area covered by a **THP**), the silvicultural practices and yarding methods used in the area over the past 10 years and the number of acres where each treatment occurred are identified. The acres of a treatment are multiplied by the disturbance rating for the silvicultural practice and by the rating for the yarding method. This product is then multiplied by the time factor (**10** minus the number of years elapsed since the treatment occurred) and divided by 10. The sum of the results for each treatment is then calculated and divided by the total acres in the area, expressing the DI as a percentage. Table 2 provides a sample calculation for a **500-acre** area. Currently, the DI does not evaluate roads and mass-wasting areas. The DI will be modified during HCP implementation and watershed analysis to include such disturbances.

**Table 1. DI Ratings For Timber Management Activities**

<b>Silviculture Practice</b>	<b>Rating</b>	<b>Yarding Method</b>	<b>Rating</b>
Clearcut	1	Tractor	1
Overstory Removal	0.7	Cable Skyline	0.6
Seed Tree Step	0.7	Tractor and Cable	0.7
Seed Tree Removal	0.7	Salvage	0.7
Shelterwood Preparation Step	0.5	unknown	0.7
Shelterwood	0.6	Cable <b>Highlead</b>	0.7
Shelterwood Removal	0.7	Helicopter	0.4
Rehabilitation	0.7		
Commercial <b>Thin</b>	0.5		
Selection	0.5		
Transition	0.6		
Alternative	0.5		
Salvage	0.3		

**Table 2. Sample DI Calculation For 500-Acre Area**

<b>Acres</b>	<b>Silviculture Practice (rating)</b>	<b>Yarding Method (rating)</b>	<b>Date of Activity (time factor)</b>	<b>current Impact Rating</b>
200	clear cut (1)	tractor (1)	1990 (year 9)	20
50	selection harvest (.5)	helicopter (.4)	1995 (year 4)	6
150	over-story removal (.7)	tractor (1)	<b>1997 (year 2)</b> 8	4
100	not managed since 1985			0
			Total Impact Rating	110
			<b>DI for the 500-Acre Area</b>	22
				<b>percent</b>

## Attachment 3: Volume II, Part O-Assessment and Implementation Techniques for Road-related Sediment Source Inventories and Stormproofing

### Upland Watershed Sediment Source Assessments

There is recent, growing recognition that effective **fisheries** protection and restoration and the long-term recovery of gravel-bedded anadromous fish streams are directly dependent on the recovery and healing of eroding hillslopes and tributary streams in upland areas of a watershed (Weaver and Hagans, 1999; PRC, 1992; Harr and Nichols, 1993). Similarly, cost-effective erosion prevention projects conducted on logged and **roaded** hillslope areas throughout a watershed can protect healthy stream channels from future impacts (Weaver and others, 1987b; Weaver and **Sonnevil**, 1984; Harr and Nichols, 1993).

A watershed sediment source assessment and an erosion prevention planning project entail the delineation of treatable, persistent, or potentially episodic sources of eroded sediment which contribute to, or threaten to deliver, significant quantities of sediment to streams. The assessment entails delineating past and future sediment sources in the watershed, describing sediment erosion and its movement into the stream channel system. It is important to learn how much sediment is coming from each of the major erosion processes (e.g., landslides along roads and stream crossing washouts) and how much of that is amenable to control or prevention.

The inventory process is similar to a “**modified**” sediment budget analysis (Dietrich and **Dunne**, 1978) where sediment delivered to the streams in a watershed is identified and quantified. However, the sediment source assessment targets future sediment sources (rather than what has happened in the past), and its primary focus is to identify and prioritize all potential sources of erosion and sediment yield that are amenable to treatment. Sources of past erosion and sedimentation are **identified** during the assessment process, but they are of interest mostly for what they tell us about similar areas that have not yet failed, but may yield sediment in the future.

There are three main objectives of a sub-watershed sediment assessment project. The objectives, and the tasks carried out to complete them, include the following:

1. Conduct a physical inventory of existing and potential sediment sources which are likely to deliver sediment to the sub-watershed and its tributary streams if they are not treated.
2. Developing a practical, fact-based, prioritized list of cost-effective erosion control and erosion prevention projects. These projects are recommended to provide for long-term protection of fish- and non-fish-bearing **stream** channels in the **sub-watershed**, in its tributaries, and in downstream areas.
3. Analyze the erosional effects of past and current land management and land use practices in the watershed with the goal of developing possible changes in land management practices, techniques, or intensities that could reduce the future delivery of sediment to streams.

In most upland forest watershed inventories and assessments, logging roads are initially singled out in the analysis both because the road network provides ready access for heavy equipment to reach potential work sites and because roads have been identified throughout the region as serious, treatable sediment sources themselves. Studies conducted in the coastal and Cascade mountains of northern California, Oregon, and Washington have indicated that roads are primary, land-use-related contributors to **onsite** erosion and downstream sediment yields that impact fish-bearing streams (Swanson and Dymess, 1975; **Swanston** and Swanson, 1976; Dymess, 1967; Reid, 1981; Weaver and others, 1981a; Frissell and **Liss**, 1986; Fiksdal, 1974; **Farrington** and Savina, 1977; **LaHusen**, 1984; **Hagans** and others, 1986; Weaver and others, 1987b; and PWA, **1994a,b**). As **discussed** previously, these impacts become most apparent in response to large storms and floods which trigger watershed-wide erosion and geomorphic change.

Stream crossings, log landings, oversteepened **sidecast** and road fills built in “suspect” geomorphic locations are prime areas where cost-effective erosion prevention projects can keep large quantities of sediment from entering streams and being transported to important spawning and rearing areas (Weaver and others, 1987b; Harr and Nichols, 1993).

## Conducting an Upland Watershed Assessment

It is necessary to follow an organized, systematic series of steps in assessing watershed sediment conditions. Only then can a manager ensure that erosion control and erosion prevention work will treat those sources of future erosion and sediment yield that could be effectively controlled for the lowest expenditure. It is not cost-effective to take the shotgun approach, where problem areas are randomly **identified** and treated without regard to their importance to **overall** watershed health or to the ability to cost-effectively control or prevent stream sedimentation.

1. **Air photo analysis**- As the first step, an air photo analysis of the watershed is conducted to help reveal the location of sensitive roads and other high priority areas for further field mapping, analysis, and potential treatment. It is important to **identify** all the roads that have ever been constructed in the watershed, whether they are currently maintained and driveable, or are now abandoned and overgrown with vegetation. When possible, historic aerial photographic coverage from a number of years (perhaps one or two flights per decade) should be selected to bracket major storms in the watershed. This will allow the identification of roads which have been storm-tested, and closer analysis will reveal at least some of the most obvious erosional consequences of storm (stream crossings washouts, landslides, debris torrents, etc.). A preliminary transportation plan is developed for the watershed at this time, outlining the best long-term permanent and seasonal road network needed to manage natural resources.
2. **Field assessment and prioritization**— Second, major, potentially treatable or preventable sources of erosion and sediment yield are identified through field inventories and prioritized for treatment during field mapping. In high-priority watersheds, efforts are made to delineate which roads pose a high risk of accelerated or chronic sediment production and delivery, or high long-term maintenance costs, and which might be excellent candidates for decommissioning (proper Hydrologic **closure**,” not just barricading or blocking to **traffic**). The

preliminary transportation plan is revised and **finalized** following this field inventory phase.

3. **Prescription development**- Once sites are identified and prioritized, general prescriptions for erosion control and erosion prevention are developed for each major source of treatable erosion that, if **left** untreated, would likely result in sediment delivery to streams. Sediment which is contributed to small streams can be as important as that which is delivered directly to major **fish-bearing** watercourses, since all sediment which enters upland streams will eventually be transported downstream to channels with **fish** habitat. Generalized prescriptions which should be identified during the field inventory include types of heavy equipment needed, equipment hours, labor intensive treatments required, estimated costs for each work site, and expected sediment savings.
4. **Treatment** recommendations- In the final step of the assessment, a report and plan is developed which outlines recommendations and pinpoints areas within **each** watershed which would benefit most **from** cost-effective erosion control and erosion prevention work. In addition, recommendations are made on how ongoing land use practices in the watershed might be further **modified** to reduce the threat of future erosion and sediment yield from ongoing land management activities.

Requiring proposed work to meet preestablished cost-effectiveness criteria is critical to developing a defensible and objective watershed protection and restoration program. *The cost-effectiveness of treating a work site is defined as the average amount of money spent to prevent one cubic yard of sediment from entering or being delivered to the stream system* (Weaver and Sonnevil, 1984). By using this evaluation methodology, a variety of different techniques and proposed projects can be compared with each other **using** the same criteria: reducing accelerated erosion and keeping eroded sediment out of the watershed's streams.

If a watershed sediment assessment is done well, the logical next step will be for skilled equipment operators, laborers, and erosion control specialists immediately to implement those projects deemed most cost-effective and most beneficial to long-term watershed health and the protection of **fisheries** resources. Implemented projects can consist of erosion control and erosion prevention work, as well as changes in land use practices (another form of proactive erosion prevention). PALCO generally implements those moderate and high priority sites with a predicted cost-effectiveness of **\$8/yd<sup>3</sup>** or less.

Effective watershed stabilization must incorporate both erosion control and erosion prevention work, **in** concert with protective land use practices. Erosion control practices for steep forested lands impacted by logging and road building have been thoroughly tested and evaluated and are applicable for most **steep**land areas (Sonnevil and Weaver, 1981; Weaver and Madej, 1981; Weaver and others, **1981a**; Weaver and Sonnevil, 1984; Weaver and others, 1987a; and Harr and Nichols, 1993). Projects which provide for erosion prevention are by far the most **cost-effective** means of protecting fish habitat and entail the recognition and treatment of potential sediment sources before they become contributors to sediment yield. Finally, simple changes in common land use practices (such as road and landing construction, road maintenance techniques, and road abandonment practices) can often go a long way to preventing unnecessary, accelerated erosion in the future. Many of these practices, as related to forest road systems, are outlined in the appendix "**Guidelines** for Forest **Roads** and Landings" (Draft HCP, July 1998).

## Sequence of Assessment Work Tasks and Data Collection Procedures

The upland watershed sediment source assessment involves several discrete steps or stages. These steps are a necessary precursor to on-the-ground watershed protection and restoration work which is to be undertaken in the future. They ensure that the most critical, cost-effective erosion prevention and erosion control projects in the watershed are undertaken first.

**Phase 1: Air photo analysis--** The first step is to assemble and analyze historic aerial photographs, maps, digital mapping data, GIS information, and relevant literature available for the watershed. These data are used to construct accurate road maps and to create a general land use and erosion history of the assessment area or sub-watershed, including road locations, road construction history, landslide locations and **mass** movement history, "**road-related**" erosion (stream crossing washouts, gullies, and landslides, where visible), expected locations of all stream crossings, and the location (and timing) of **streamside** landslides. Stream flow records for this or nearby watersheds are also reviewed to determine information on the magnitude and frequency of historic floods.

An enlarged version of the **7½-minute** USGS quadrangle(s), taken **from** digital map data, is used as the base for **identification** and location of roads, watersheds, and property boundaries in the assessment area. Enlarged versions of the **7½-minute** USGS quadrangles can be used to plot road locations, mapped sites and treatment locations. PALCO has **sufficient** GIS capabilities to produce accurate base maps. Every road that is identified from the aerial photo analysis is then scheduled for field assessment **to** identify both past and future sediment sources.

Aerial photographs used for field mapping are typically **1:12,000** scale (**1** inch equals 1,000 feet), color, or black-and-white **9- by 9-inch**, vertical photos flown as recently as is possible. This is a good scale to employ, as smaller scale photos (e.g., **1:20,000**) **often** do not provide **sufficient** clarity or detail. Recent photos are often available in true color. Historic black and white aerial photographs, taken beginning in the **1940s**, provide a time sequence of images used to isolate periods of harvesting, road building, road abandonment, and erosion (especially **landsliding**) in the watershed.

**Phase 2: Field assessment (inventory)—** **Phase two** of the watershed sediment source assessment involves field inventories and site analyses. Several levels of field inventory and assessment are carried out. Detailed inventories of all maintained and abandoned road systems are used to identify and determine past and future contributions of sediment to the stream system, as well as potential treatment sites. The most critical areas and road systems identified during the air photo analysis are inventoried and evaluated in the greatest detail

For the detailed field assessment, acetate overlays are attached to each **9- by 9-inch** aerial photograph and used to record site location information as it is collected in the field. Information recorded on these overlays includes road location, site number and location (road mileage), **type** or **classification** of site, erosional features (**streamside** landslides, debris torrents, potential debris slides, gullies and gullied stream channels, washed-out stream crossings, etc.), stream channels, stream crossings, landings, and all culvert locations. Global positioning system (**GPS**) technology is also be used to identify the location of sites for GIS (computer mapping) applications.

A computer database (data form) is then developed, and more detailed information is collected for each site of potential sediment yield **identified** in the field. Depending on the classification

of a site (stream crossing, debris slide, gully, road and **cutbank** erosion, streamside slides, etc.), different portions of the database form are filled in with the relevant information. Basic information is collected for every site.

**Identified** sites are **first classified** according to their potential for sediment delivery to stream channels. Very small sites are often not worth inventorying separately, unless they become cumulatively **significant** (such as road ditches). Past inventories (e.g., Weaver and others, 1981a) have shown that it is typically the larger sites that account for most of the accelerated (land-use related) sediment yield from a watershed. Therefore, it is important to identify a lower threshold of sediment yield below which a site is not identified in the field inventory. In most watersheds, this minimum site size may range **from** 10 to 50 cubic yards, depending on the watershed. In large watershed inventories, it is often **sufficient** to identify those sites where there is a potential to yield at least 25 or 50 cubic yards of sediment to a stream channel (excluding the more **diffuse** sediment sources such as road surfaces, ditches, and cut-banks).

During sub-watershed inventories, special attention is paid to all major stream crossings, all stream crossings with a high diversion potential (**DP**), and all stream crossings with a high failure potential (**FP**) (e.g., undersized culverts). Based on past inventory work, each of these categories of stream crossings is assumed to have a high potential for delivering sediment to stream channels, particularly if they are located on roads that are abandoned or no longer receive frequent maintenance. Erosion and failure of stream crossings on abandoned and unmaintained roads, in particular, are likely to eventually occur when culverts plug during large storms. Once erosion has been initiated, sediment lost **from** these locations will be delivered directly into low-order stream channels and, **eventually**, to the larger fish-bearing streams.

Visibly unstable **fillslopes**, unstable log landings, and unstable **hillslopes** crossed by either abandoned or maintained logging roads are also described, **especially** if they threaten to deliver sediment to a downslope stream channel. To be visibly unstable, the **identified** site usually exhibits tension cracks, vertical **scarps**, excessive **sidecast** on steep slopes, springs, leaning trees, or other geomorphic evidence suggesting past or pending slope failure.

The erosion potential, the potential for sediment delivery, and the potential for rare, but extreme, amounts of erosion are estimated for each major problem site or potential problem site in the watershed. The past and future expected volume of sediment to be eroded, and the volume to be delivered to streams, is also estimated for each site. The data tell not only how much has been eroded and delivered **from** existing sites, they also provide estimates on how much will be eroded and delivered in the future, if no erosion control or erosion prevention work is performed. In some locations, future sediment loss could exceed field predictions. At the same time, some inventoried features which show signs of pending or potential failure may never move or deliver sediment to stream channels.

**Finally**, in addition to erosional features along roads, selected portions of tributary streams within each sub-watershed assessment area are inspected for signs of bank instability, past stream side landsliding, or future bank failures. The volume of both past and future erosion and **landsliding** is estimated and logged on a data form, as well as any obvious associations with past or ongoing land management activities, so that initial estimates of the volumetric importance of each erosion process (**a** sediment source assessment) can be developed. In addition, some of these streamside sites may also be amenable to treatment and stabilization.

**Phase 3: Prescribing treatment- During the** field inventory of existing and potential erosion sources, a more detailed analysis of each significant site is performed. This step includes an analysis of the most effective and cost-effective erosion prevention and/or erosion control work that could be applied to each of the sites recommended for treatment, including all sites classified as having a high, moderate, or low priority for treatment. Recommended treatments are generally prescribed only for sites with a potential for future erosion and sediment yield because they are the only ones capable of delivering sediment to downstream fish-bearing stream channels.

The analysis of each recommended treatment site includes generalized heavy equipment and labor-intensive prescriptions, as well as procedures, cost estimates, and equipment times needed for effective treatment. The sites selected for eventual treatment are the ones that are expected to generate the most cost-effective reduction in sediment delivery to the drainage network and the **mainstem** stream channel. Sites which may experience erosion or slope failure, but which are not expected to deliver sediment to a stream channel, are not recommended for treatment to protect **fisheries** resources. General treatments are cataloged in the computer database during field examination of each site. The **specifics** of the recommended treatments, as well as costs and logistics (e.g., equipment types, excavation volumes, equipment hours, etc.), are all outlined in this step.

### Assessing Treatment Priorities Within Each Inventoried Sub-watershed

As described above, basic treatment priorities and prescriptions are formulated concurrent with the identification, description, and mapping of past and potential sources of road-related erosion and sediment yield. Treatment priorities are evaluated on the basis of the following factors and conditions associated with each potential erosion site:

1. The potential for future erosion (high, moderate, or low)
2. The expected volume of sediment to be delivered to streams (sediment delivery)
3. The urgency of treating the site (treatment immediacy)
4. The ease and cost of accessing the site for treatments
5. Recommended treatments, logistics, and costs

The likelihood of erosion (erosion potential) and the volume of sediment expected to enter stream channels **from** future erosion (sediment delivery) at each site play **significant** roles in determining its treatment priority. The larger the potential future contribution of sediment to streams, the more important it becomes to closely evaluate its potential for cost-effective treatment.

An erosion potential factor is evaluated as to the likelihood of future erosion based on local site conditions and field observations. Erosion potential should be expressed as **high**, moderate, or low. It is used as a subjective probability estimate and not an estimate of the volume of erosion.

**Treatment immediacy** (treatment priority) Treatment immediacy is evaluated as to how important it is to perform erosion control or erosion prevention work quickly. It is also defined as high, moderate, or low, and it represents the severity or urgency of the threat to downstream areas. An evaluation of treatment immediacy considers erosion potential, future erosion and delivery volumes, the value or sensitivity of downstream resources being protected, and treatability, as well as, in some cases, whether or not there is the potential for an extremely

large erosion event occur at the site (larger than field evidence might at **first** suggest). If mass movement, culvert failure, or sediment delivery is imminent, even in an average winter, then treatment may have to be performed as soon as possible, and treatment immediacy might be judged high. Generally, sites that are likely to erode or fail in a normal winter, and that are expected to deliver significant quantities of sediment to a stream channel, should be rated as having a high treatment immediacy or priority.

One other factor influencing a site's treatment priority is the **difficulty** (cost and environmental impact) of reaching the site with the necessary equipment to effectively treat the potential erosion. Many sites found on abandoned or **unmaintained** roads require brushing and tree removal to provide access to the site(s). Other roads require minor or major rebuilding of washed-out stream crossings and/or existing landslides in order to reach potential work sites farther out the alignment. Road reconstruction adds to the overall cost of erosion control work and reduces project cost-effectiveness. Potential work sites with lower cost-effectiveness, in turn, may be of relatively lower priority. The fact that a road is abandoned and/or overgrown with vegetation is not **sufficient reason** to discount its assessment and potential treatment. Treatments on heavily overgrown, abandoned roads may still be both beneficial and **cost-effective**.

### Evaluating Treatment Cost-effectiveness

Treatment priorities are developed from the above factors, as well as from the estimated **cost-effectiveness** of the proposed erosion control or erosion prevention treatment. **Cost-effectiveness** is determined by dividing the cost (\$) of accessing and treating a site by the volume of sediment prevented **from** being delivered to local stream channels. For example, if it would cost \$2,000 to access and treat an eroding stream crossing that would have delivered 500 cubic yards (had it been left to erode), the predicted cost-effectiveness would be \$4 per cubic yard (\$2,000 per 500 cubic yards).

To be considered for priority treatment a site should typically exhibit **1)** potential for **significant** (more than 25 to 50 cubic yards) sediment delivery to a stream channel (with the potential for transport to a fish-bearing stream), **2)** a high or moderate treatment immediacy, and **3)** a predicted cost-effectiveness value of no more than about \$3 per cubic yard. Other criteria may be important in selected watersheds, including domestic water supplies, listed aquatic species, or other valuable downstream resources. Treatment cost-effectiveness analysis is often applied to a group of sites (rather than on a single site-by-site basis) so that only the most cost-effective groups of projects are undertaken. During road decommissioning, groups of sites are usually considered together since there will be only one opportunity to treat potential sediment sources along the road.

Cost-effectiveness can be used as a tool to prioritize potential treatment sites throughout a **sub-watershed** (Weaver and others, 1981b; Weaver and Sonnevil, 1984). It assures that the greatest benefit is received for the limited funding that is typically available for protection and restoration projects. Sites, or groups of sites, that have a predicted marginal cost-effectiveness value (more than \$8 per cubic yard), or are judged to have a lower erosion potential or treatment immediacy, or low sediment delivery rates, are less likely to be treated as a part of the primary watershed protection and erosion-proofing program. However, these sites are usually addressed during future road reconstruction (when access is reopened into areas for future management activities), or when heavy equipment is performing routine maintenance or restoration work on nearby, higher priority sites.

## Reducing Watershed Sediment Risks through Preventive Treatments and Protective Measures

Various treatments are applied to prevent erosion and sediment yield to stream channels from roads and other eroding areas within each sub-watershed. These include erosion-proofing along roads and landings, total or partial road decommissioning, road upgrading, and specific treatments along eroding stream banks, gullies, and other bare soil areas. Sites which are expected to erode and deliver sediment to streams in the future are the only locations where opportunity exists for meaningful erosion control and erosion prevention work in a watershed. At these locations, various **specific** treatments are employed to control and prevent future erosion and sediment delivery to stream channels.

### Risk Reduction through Road Decommissioning and Road Upgrading

A critical **first** step in the overall risk-reduction process is the development of a watershed transportation analysis and plan. All roads in each planning watershed are considered for either **decommissioning** or upgrading, depending upon the risk of their impacting the aquatic ecosystem. Not all roads are high-risk, and those that pose a low risk of impacting aquatic habitat in the watershed may not need immediate attention. It is, therefore, important to rank and prioritize roads in each sub-watershed based on the potential to impact downstream resources, as well as importance to the overall transportation system and management needs in the watershed.

Decommissioning- **Roads** which are of low relative priority for decommissioning include those that follow low-gradient ridges, roads that traverse large benches or low-gradient upland slopes, and roads with few or no stream crossings. **Roads** that are no longer needed for land or resource management may or may not fall into a high risk classification for removal because of where they are located in the watershed. For **example**, many dead-end spur roads which lead to cable yarding landings high on the hilllope fit into this category of low priority roads for decommissioning. Even though these routes might be relatively easy and inexpensive to permanently close, they are not high priority candidates for immediate decommissioning since their removal will do little to protect the downstream aquatic ecosystem.

These types of low-impact seasonal and temporary roads may be identified for closure, but their removal **from** the transportation system may do little to protect or remove real threats to the aquatic ecosystem. It is also important to identify more substantial, permanent roads for removal if they pose **significant** threats to the aquatic system. Estimating the future sediment yield and treatment cost-effectiveness of projects along all roads (as described above) will help identify which roads in the watershed are truly the best targets for decommissioning.

Based on potential threats to the aquatic ecosystem, various roads qualify as best candidates for decommissioning. These often include roads built in riparian areas, roads with a high potential risk of sediment production (such as those built on steep inner gorge slopes and those built across **unstable** or highly erodible soils), roads built in tributary canyons where stream crossings and steep slopes are common, roads that have high maintenance costs and requirements, and abandoned roads. General techniques for decommissioning (described below) are well documented and tested, and costs and procedures for each type of activity have been established (**Sonnevil** and Weaver, 1981; Weaver and others, 1987a; Weaver and Hagans, 1990; Harr and Nichols, 1993; NT'S, 1992).

**Upgrading-** In most managed watersheds, some roads typically are needed to provide for long-term resource management, for administrative access, for **fire** control, and for other purposes. Roads which are best suited for retention have to be identified in the transportation planning process for each sub-watershed. To be protective of fish habitat and the aquatic ecosystem in the watershed, this planning **first** considers the erosional consequences of road retention and then the expressed needs for management activities.

Retained roads are those that are expressly needed for management or as a component of the overall transportation network. They are typically, but not exclusively, located on stable terrain, where the risk of **fluvial** erosion, stream crossing failure, storm damage, and mass soil movement (**landsliding**) is lowest. Each retained road is then upgraded and redesigned as necessary, to make it largely self-maintaining or requiring low levels of maintenance.

Various upgrading techniques are available to make these stable, well-located roads as stormproof as is possible. The goal of road upgrading is to strictly minimize the contributions of **fine** sediment from roads and ditches to stream channels, as well as to minimize the risk of serious erosion and sediment yield when large-magnitude, infrequent storms and floods occur.

**Fine** sediment contributions from roads, cutbanks, and ditches in refuge watersheds are minimized by **utilizing** seasonal closures for hauling and travel, road surfacing, converting ditched **insloped** roads to outsloped alignments (especially at and near the approaches to stream crossings), adding rolling dips to drain and disperse road surface runoff, and adding rolling dips or ditch relief culverts immediately adjacent stream crossings (to reduce extension of the drainage network and eliminate ditch contributions to sediment yield).

**Specific** techniques employed to stormproof forest roads include increasing culvert **size** to accommodate the **50-year** flood discharge (or greater), replacing large culverts with bridges, replacing culverted **fills** with hardened fords in areas where debris torrenting is common or can be expected, eliminating the potential for stream diversion at all high-risk stream crossings, **stabilizing** or removing unstable **fills** and sidecast, and realigning road segments to avoid instabilities and recognized headwater **swales** where landsliding and debris **torrenting** are likely to occur.

### Types of Prescribed Heavy Equipment Erosion Prevention Treatments

Generic specifications for a variety of preventive watershed treatments have been developed for decommissioning and erosion-proofing (upgrading) roads and landings throughout the Pacific Northwest. Recommended treatments may range from no treatment or simple waterbarring, to full road decommissioning, including the excavation of unstable **sidecast** materials, road **fills**, and all stream crossing fills. Each of the treatments prescribed for roads or **hillslopes** has been well-tested, documented, and evaluated in similar erosion control and erosion prevention projects on steep forested lands and has been shown to be effective in **significantly** reducing sediment yield **from** managed forest lands (**Harr** and Nichols, 1993; Sonnevil and Weaver, 1981; Weaver and others, 1981a; Weaver and others, **1987a,b**; Weaver and Sonnevil, 1984).

**Road upgrading-** This activity involves a variety of treatments used to make a road more resilient in large storms and flood flows. The most important of these includes stream crossing upgrading (especially culvert **up-sizing** and elimination of stream diversion potential), removal of unstable **sidecast** and fill materials **from** steep slopes, and the application of drainage techniques to improve dispersion of road surface runoff. Standard road upgrading techniques are well documented and understood (for example, see Pacific Watershed Associates, **1994c**).

Road upgrading costs may not **differ significantly from** those required for road decommissioning. Costs are highly dependent on the frequency and nature of the potential erosion problems along the alignment, the number and **size** of stream crossings whose drainage structures must be upgraded, the number of bridge installations required, and road surface treatments and surfacing requirements, as well as the **size** (volume) of unstable fills that must be excavated and end-hauled to stable spoil disposal locations.

General heavy equipment treatments for road decommissioning are newer and less well published, but the basic techniques have been tested, described, and evaluated (**Harr** and Nichols, 1993; Weaver and others, 1987a; Weaver and **Sonnevil**, 1984). Decommissioning essentially involves “reverse road construction,” except that full topographic obliteration of the road bed is not normally required to accomplish sediment prevention goals. In order to protect the aquatic ecosystem, our goal is to hydrologically decommission the road, that is, to minimize the adverse effect of the road on natural hillslope and watershed hydrology. From least intensive to most intensive, decommissioning and upgrading tasks for roads will include at least some of the following tasks’:

1. **Road ripping or &compaction**, in which the surface of the road or landing is decompacted or **disaggregated** using mechanical rippers. This action reduces surface runoff and often dramatically improves revegetation.
2. **Rolling dip installation / construction (critical dip)** involves dipping the roadbed at stream crossings on maintained roads where the potential for stream diversion is high, thereby assuring that when culverts plug, stream flow will be directed over the road prism and back into the natural stream channel, rather than down the road bed. **Rolling** dips are also installed along roads to dram the road surface and disperse excess surface runoff.
3. **Waterbars and cross-road** drains are installed at **50-, 75-, or 100-foot** intervals, or as necessary at springs and seeps, to disperse road surface runoff, especially on roads that are to be permanently or temporarily decommissioned. Cross-road drains are large ditches or trenches excavated across a road or landing surface to provide drainage and to prevent the collection of concentrated runoff on the former road bed. Waterbars are also installed on seasonal-use roads that are closed during the wet season.
4. **Installing or cleaning culverts** includes adding new or larger culverts where they are needed, or cleaning the inlets or outlets of partially plugged culverts on maintained roads. Correct installation procedures are briefly described in the accompanying text “**Guidelines** for Forest Roads and Landings.”
5. **In-place stream crossing excavation (IPRX)** is a decommissioning treatment that is employed at locations where roads or landings were built across stream channels. The fill (including the culvert) is completely excavated, and the original stream bed and side slopes are exhumed. Excavated spoil is stored at nearby stable locations where it will not erode, sometimes being pushed several hundred feet from the crossing by tractor(s). A stream crossing excavation typically involves more than

---

‘Many of these and other erosion prevention and erosion control techniques are described in the accompanying text “**Guidelines** for Forest **Roads** and Landings.”’

simply removing the culvert, as the underlying and adjacent fill material must also be removed and stabilized.

6. *Exported stream crossing excavation (ERX)* is a decommissioning treatment where stream crossing fill material is excavated and spoil is hauled off-site for storage. **Spoil** is moved farther up or down-road from the crossing, due to the limited amount of stable storage locations at the excavation site. **This treatment frequently** requires dump trucks to end-haul spoil material **to** the off-site location.
7. *In-place outsloping (IPOS)* (“pulling the **sidecast**”) calls for excavating unstable or potentially unstable **sidecast** material along the outside edge of a road prism or landing and replacing the spoil on the roadbed against the corresponding, adjacent **cutbank**, or within several hundred feet of the site. Placement of the spoil material against the **cutbank** usually blocks access to the road and is used in road decommissioning. In road upgrading, the excavated material can be used to build up the roadbed and convert an insloped, ditched road to an outsloped road.
8. *Exported out&ping (EOS)* is comparable to in-place outsloping, except spoil material is moved **offsite** to a permanent, stable storage location. Where the road prism is very narrow, where there are springs along the road **cutbank** or where continued use of the road is anticipated, spoil material typically is not placed against the **cutbank**, and material is end-hauled to a spoil disposal site. This treatment frequently requires dump trucks **to** end-haul spoil material. This treatment removes all or part of the roadbed.

Only in relatively few instances does road decommissioning have to include full recontouring of the original road bed. Typically, potential problem areas along a road are isolated **to** a few locations (perhaps 10 to 20 percent of the road network to be decommissioned) where stream crossings have to be excavated, unstable landing and road **sidecast** has to be removed before it fails, or roads cross potentially unstable terrain, and the entire prism has to be removed. Most of the remaining road surface simply needs permanently improved surface drainage, using decompaction, road drains, and/or partial outsloping.

Successfully decommissioning most roads will cost a fraction of complete or total topographic road obliteration and can be **significantly** less expensive than road upgrading. Costs are **highly** dependent on the frequency and nature of the potential erosion problems along the alignment. Table 1 lists a number of treatments and their typical applications.

Table 1. Sample Techniques and Applications for Decommissioning Forest Roads

<b>Treatment</b>	<b>Typical Use or Application</b>
Ripping or decompaction	Improve infiltration; decrease runoff; assist revegetation
Construction of rolling dips and cross-road drains	Drain springs; drain insloped roads; drain landings
Partial outsloping (local spoil site; fill against the cutbank)	Remove minor unstable fills; disperse cutbank seeps and runoff
Complete outsloping (local spoilsite; fill against the cutbank)	Remove unstable fill material where nearby cutbank is dry and stable
Exported outsloping (fill pushed away and stored down-road)	Remove unstable road fills where cutbanks have springs and cannot be buried
Landing excavations (with local spoil storage)	Remove unstable material around landing perimeter

Stream crossing excavations (with local spoil storage)  
Truck endhauling (dump truck)

Complete removal of stream crossing fills (not just culvert removal)  
Haul excavated spoil to stable, permanent storage location where it will not discharge to a stream

---

## labor-intensive Erosion Control and Revegetation Treatments

Hand labor is typically used for both revegetation and erosion control work at sites disturbed by heavy equipment, where drainage structures need repair or upgrading, and where hand labor is needed to assist in excavation work. Hand labor is also needed on sections of road that are recommended for upgrading. Labor work at drainage structures includes such preventive tasks as adding culvert downspouts and trash racks, adding extensions **to** culverts, cleaning culvert inlets, cleaning debris out of the channel above a culvert **inlet**, and **assisting** in culvert installation or replacement.

Labor-intensive erosion control treatments are often needed on sites where heavy equipment has been used to perform road decommissioning. Such treatment is primarily confined to those measures required to **stabilize** and revegetate soils exposed by heavy equipment operations. Only the most effective and cost-effective labor techniques should be prescribed. These include mulching, seeding, and planting. In general, heavy equipment will perform most of the significant erosion prevention and erosion control work in drainage basins and along road networks.

## Control of Chronic Sediment Yield from Roads and Roadside Ditches

Road **cutbanks** and road ditches are thought to deliver relatively significant volumes of **fine** sediment to some watersheds in the Pacific Northwest (Reid, **1981**), and they have been found to **significantly affect** watershed hydrology (Wemple, 1994). Relatively simple treatments will also be performed to upgrade **PALCO** road drainage systems to significantly reduce or largely eliminate these watershed effects. Fine sediment can usually be prevented from entering culverted stream crossings by **installing** ditch relief culverts or rolling dips just up-road **from** stream crossings, or by **outsloping** roads in the immediate vicinity of stream crossings (Pacific Watershed Associates, **1994a**). Such treatments **also** reduce the hydrologic impacts of roads (e.g., increased peak flows and timing of peak flows) on watershed function.

## Reducing Watershed Risks through Other land Management Measures

Physical treatment of the erosion control and erosion prevention work sites is a useful and necessary step in watershed stabilization. It is one of two complementary methods for **erosion-proofing** and protecting a watershed from future impacts. The second, and perhaps the most cost-effective, tool for minimizing future erosion and sediment delivery to fish-bearing streams is the use of preventive land use practices and protection measures which limit watershed disturbances.

Throughout field mapping of active and abandoned roads, timber harvest sites, rock pits, and **grazing** areas throughout each sub-watershed, observations are kept on the effect of past and current land use practices on erosion and sediment delivery to stream channels. Certain combinations of land use practices and site variables (soils, slope gradient, bedrock geology, slope position, **etc**) are may be documented to contribute to, or influence, the magnitude or location of watershed erosion. Based on field observations and watershed assessment and inventory data, current and future land use practices can then be modified in that watershed to

help provide passive protection to downstream aquatic resources, especially from impacts which occur during infrequent floods.

Practical protection measures related to road networks and timber harvesting are developed to address issues such as improved road location and design standards, operations (including timber harvesting) on steep inner gorge slopes or other suspect geomorphic locations, road construction and drainage practices, stream crossings, road maintenance practices, **gullying** and stream bank erosion, and road decommissioning. For grazed lands, grazing allocations, and **riparian** planting, and fencing localized enclosures, seasonal restrictions, and other passive measures can be employed to lessen the potential for sediment-related impacts to stream channels.

As with other forms of watershed conservation practices, erosion prevention is usually far more cost-effective than trying to control erosion once it has begun. Most of the recommendations for land use activities that stem from a watershed assessment and inventory focus on prevention.

## References Cited

- Biswell**, B.L. and E. Forsman. 1997. **Draft** - The effects of landscape character and stand structure on the distribution and abundance of the red tree vole (*Arborimus longicaudus*) in western Oregon. **Pacific** Northwest Research Station, Olympia, Washington. **13pp**.
- Cederhohn, C.J. and L.M. Reid. 1987. Impact of forest management on Coho salmon populations of the Clear-water River, Washington: A project summary. **In**: Streamside Management, eds. **Salo** and Cundy. University of Washington, Institute of Forest Resources, pages 372-398.
- Dietrich**, W.E. and T. **Dunne**, 1978, Sediment budget for a small catchment in mountainous **terrane**, Ziet. Geomorph. N.F., Suppl. Bd. 29, pages **191-206**.
- Dryness, C.T., 1987, Mass soil movement in the H.J. Andrews Experimental Forest, USDA, Forest Service, **PNW** Research Station, Portland, Oregon, **PNW-42**, **12** pages.
- Farrington**, R.L. and M.E. Savina, **1977**, **Off-site** effects of roads and **clearcut** units on slope stability and stream channels, Fox Planning Unit, USFS, Six Rivers National Forest, Eureka, California.
- Fiksdal, A.J., 1974, A landslide survey of the Stequalehoe Creek watershed, University of Washington, Fish Research Institute, FRI-UW-7404.
- Frissell, CA. and **R.K.** Nawa, 1992, Incidence and causes of physical failure of artificial habitat structures in streams of western Oregon and Washington. North American Journal of Fisheries Management, **12:182-187**.
- Frissell, CA. and W.J. Liss, 1988, Classification of stream habitat and watershed systems in south coastal Oregon, and an assessment of land use impacts, Progress report prepared for Oregon Dept. of Fish and Wildlife, Oak Creek Laboratory, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon, 51 pages.
- Frissell**, CA, 1992, Cumulative effects of land use on salmon habitat in Southwest Oregon coastal streams, Ph.D. Thesis, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oregon, 227 pages.
- Frissell, CA, 1993, A new strategy for watershed restoration and recovery of **Pacific** salmon in the **Pacific** Northwest. Prepared for the **Pacific** Rivers Council, Eugene, OR. 31 pages.

- Gould, G. 1997. **Draft** - distribution of the California red tree vole: preliminary evaluation. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, California **5pp**.
- Grant, G., 1988, The RAPID technique: a new method for evaluating downstream effects of forest practices on riparian zones. USFS, Pacific Northwest Forest Research Station, Gen. Tech. Report PNW-GTR-220, Portland, OR. 36 pages.
- Hagans, **D.K. and** W.E. Weaver, 1987, Magnitude, cause and basin response to **fluvial** erosion, Redwood Creek basin, northern California. **In:** Erosion and sedimentation in the Pacific Rim (proceedings of the **Corvallis** symposium, August, **1987**), Eds. R.L. Beschta and others, **IAHS** Publication No. 165, pp. 419-428.
- Hagans, **D.K.**, W.E. Weaver and MA. Madej. 1986. Long-Term **Onsite** and **Off-Site** Effects of Logging and Erosion in the Redwood Creek Basin, Northern California. **In:** Papers presented at Amer. Geophys. Union meeting on cumulative effects (9-13 Dec. 1985, San Francisco, **Calif.**), Tech. Bull. 496, pp. 3866, National Council of the Paper Industry (NCASI), New York, New York.
- Harr, R.D. and RA. Nichols. 1993, Stabilizing forest roads to help restore **fish** habitats: A Northwest Washington example. Fisheries. Vol.18, no. 4, pages 18-22.
- Higgins, P., S. **Dobush** and D. Fuller, 1992, Factors in northern California threatening stocks with extinction. Prepared for the Humboldt Chapter American Fisheries Society, Arcata, CA, 26 pages.
- Kelsey, H.M., M. Raines and M.J. Fumiss, 1989, Sediment budget for Grouse Creek basin, Humboldt County, California. Grouse Creek Study, Technical Report **#1**, USFS, Six Rivers National Forest, Eureka, CA, 78 pages.
- Knopp, C., 1993, Testing indices of cold water fish habitat. Final report for North Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board, Santa Rosa, CA., 56 pages.
- LaHusen**, R.G. 1984. Characteristics of management-related debris flows, northwestern California. In: Symposium on effects of forest land use on erosion and slope stability, eds. C.L. **O'Loughlin** and A.J. Pearce. **IUFRO**, May, 1984.
- Lisle, T.E. and S. Hilton, 1992, The volume of **fine** sediment in pools: an index of sediment supply in gravel-bed streams. Water Resources Bulletin, **vol.28**, no 2, pages 371-383.
- Lisle, T.E., 1981, The recovery of stream channels in north coastal California from recent large floods. **In:** Habitat Disturbance and Recovery Proceedings (**K. Hashagen (ed)**), Cal Trout, San Francisco, **CA**, pages 31-41.
- Madej, MA., 1987, Residence times of channel-stored sediment in Redwood Creek, northwestern California, **In:** Erosion and Sedimentation in the Pacific Rim, Proceedings of the Corvallis Symposium, August, 1987, IAHS Publication No. 165, pages 429-438.
- National Park Service (**NPS**), 1992, Watershed restoration manual. Redwood National Park, Crescent City, California. 39 pages.
- Nehlsen, W., J.E. Williams, JA. Lichatowich, 1991, Pacific salmon at the crossroads: west coast stocks of salmon, **steelhead**, and sea-run cutthroat trout at **risk**, Fisheries, Vol. 16, No. 2: pages 421.

- Pacific Rivers Council (**PRC**), 1992, **Salmonid** habitat restoration: rationale and framework for legislation. PRC, Eugene, Oregon, 6 p.
- Pacific Watershed Associates (**PWA**), 1990, Pine Creek watershed assessment report: A plan of action for erosion prevention and erosion control in the Pine Creek watershed, **Hoopa** Tribal Fisheries, **Hoopa**, CA., 95 pages + appendices.
- Pacific Watershed Associates, **1994a**, Dumont Creek watershed assessment report: an erosion inventory and plan of action for erosion prevention and erosion control, Dumont Creek, Umpqua National Forest, Oregon, prepared for the U.S. Forest Service, Umpqua National Forest, Roseburg, Oregon, and the Pacific Rivers Council, Eugene, Oregon, 85 pages + appendices.
- Pacific Watershed Associates, **1994b**, Action plan for restoration of the South Fork Trinity River watershed and its **fisheries**, prepared for the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, and the Trinity River Task Force, **Weaverville**, California, 388 pages.
- Pacific Watershed Associates, **1994c**, Handbook for forest and ranch roads, prepared for the Mendocino County Resource Conservation District in cooperation with the **California** Department of Forestry and the U.S. **Soil** Conservation Service. Mendocino Resource Conservation District, Ukiah, California. 163 pages.
- Pacific Watershed Associates, 1996, Aerial reconnaissance evaluation of 1996 storm effects on upland mountainous watersheds of Oregon and southern Washington. Prepared for the Pacific Rivers **Council**, Eugene, Oregon, 22 pages + appendices.
- Reeves, G.H., F.H. Everest, and T.E. **Nickelson**, 1988, Identification of physical habitat **limiting** the production of **coho salmon** in western **Oregon** and **Washington**. USFS, **Pacific** Northwest Research Station, Portland, OR, PNW-GTR-245.
- Reid, L.M., 1981, Sediment production **from** gravel-surfaced forest roads, Clearwater Basin, Washington. University of Washington, **College** of Fisheries, Fisheries Research Institute, Publication No. FRI-UW-8108, Seattle, WA. 247 p.
- Sedell**, J.R., G.H. Reeves, F.R. Hauer, J.A. Stanford, and C.P. Hawkins. 1990. Role of refugia in recovery **from** disturbance: modern fragmentation and disconnected river systems. Environmental Management. Vol. 14, pages 711-724.
- Sonnevil**, RA. and W.E. Weaver, 1981, The evolution of approaches and techniques to control erosion on logged lands in Redwood National Park, 1977-1981, **In**: Watershed **Rehabilitation** in Redwood National Park and other **Pacific Coastal** Areas, proceedings of a symposium held August **24-28, 1981**, Ed: R.N. Coats, The Center for Natural Resources Studies of JMI, Inc. (**Napa** California) and Redwood National Park (**Arcata**, California), pages 258-272.
- Swanson, D.R., M.M. Swanson and C. Woods. 1981. Analysis of debris-avalanche erosion in steep forest lands: an example **from** Mapleton, Oregon. In: Erosion and sediment transport in Pacific Rim steeplands. **I.A.H.S.** publ. no. 132, pages 67-75.
- Swanson, F.J. and F.J. **Dyrness**. 1975. Impact of clearcutting and road construction on soil erosion by landslides in the Western Cascade Range, Oregon. Geology. Vo13, No 7, pages 393-396.

- Swanston, D.N. and F.J. Swanson. 1976. Timber harvesting, mass erosion and steep land forest geomorphology in the Pacific Northwest. In: Geomorphology and Engineering, ed. D.R. Coates. **Dowden**, Hutchinson and Ross, Publishers, Stroudsburg, Pennsylvania, pages 199-221.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture (U.S. Forest Service), 1993, "Forest Ecosystem Management: An Ecological, Economic and Social Assessment." Forest Ecosystem Management Assessment Team (**FEMAT**), Interagency SEIS Team, Portland, Oregon.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture (U.S. Forest Service), April 1996. "**Landslides - 1995-1996.**" Unpublished report. Clearwater National Forest, **Orofino**, Idaho.
- Weaver, W.E. and **D.K.** Hagans, 1990, Techniques and costs for effective road closure, Pacific Watershed Associates Technical Paper **#90-1**, 7 p.
- Weaver, W.E. and MA. Madej, 1981, Erosion control techniques **used** in Redwood National Park, Northern California, 1978-1979, **In:** Proceedings, 1981 Symposium on Erosion and Sediment Transport in Pacific Rim Steeplands, Pub. No. 132, International Association of Hydrological Sciences, Washington, D.C., pages 640-654.
- Weaver, W.E. and RA. Sonnevil, 1984, Relative **cost-** effectiveness of erosion control for forest land rehabilitation, Redwood National Park, **In:** Erosion **Control...Man** and Nature, Proceedings of Conference XV, International Erosion Control Association, February 23 and **24, 1984**, Denver, Colorado, pages 83-115.
- Weaver, W.E., A.V. **Choquette**, **D.K.** Hagans and J. **Schlosser**, **1981a**, The Effects of Intensive Forest Land Use and Subsequent Landscape Rehabilitation on Erosion Rates and Sediment Yield in the Copper Creek Drainage Basin, Redwood National Park, **In:** Proceedings, Symposium on Watershed Rehabilitation in Redwood National Park and **Other** Coastal Areas, August 1981, Arcata, California, Center for Natural Resource Studies of the John Muir Institute, Berkeley, California, pages 298-312.
- Weaver, W.E., **D.K.** Hagans and MA. Madej, **1987b**, Managing forest roads to control cumulative erosion and sedimentation effects. **In:** Proc. of the California watershed management conference, Report **11 (18-20)** Nov. 1986, West Sacramento, **Calif.**, **Wildland** Resources Center, Univ. of California, Berkeley, California, 6 pages.
- Weaver, W.E., M.M. Hektner, **D.K.** Hagans, L.J. Reed, **R.A.** Sonnevil, G.J. Bundros. 1987a. An Evaluation of Experimental Rehabilitation Work, Redwood National Park. Redwood National Park Technical Report 19. Nat'l Park Service, Redwood National Park. Arcata, California, 163 pages.
- Weaver, W.E., M.S. Seltnerich, RA Sonnevil, and E.M. Babcock, **1981b**, The Use of Cost-Effectiveness as a Technique to Evaluate and Improve Watershed Rehabilitation for Erosion Control, Redwood National Park, **In:** Proceedings, Symposium on Watershed Rehabilitation in Redwood National Park and **Other** Coastal Areas, August **24-28, 1981**, Arcata, California, Center for Natural Resource Studies of the John Muir Institute, Berkeley, California, pages 341-360.
- Weaver, William E., Danny **K.** Hagans, and James H. Popenoe, 1995, Magnitude and causes of gully erosion in the lower Redwood Creek basin, Northwestern California, U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 14541, Pages 11-121.

Wemple, B.C., 1994, Hydrologic integration of forest roads with stream networks in two basins, western Cascades, Oregon. Oregon State University. **MS**. Thesis.

## EXHIBIT A

### Explanation/Instruction for Road Inventory Data Form

The following field inventory dataforms are examples of the **types** of data, related to stormproofing watersheds, currently being collected on PALCO lands. The data collection process is iterative. As new knowledge is gained about ecosystem processes, the specific questions on the data form will change to reflect this increased understanding.

The Field Inventory Data Form was developed to assist in the assessment of past and potential future erosion problems, including their nature, cause, magnitude, and solution. It is used to identify and classify erosion problems, to prioritize potential work sites, and to prescribe **specific** watershed treatments aimed at protecting stream channels and fish habitat.

Use of this work sheet is intended to provide a standardized and comparable analysis of observed features throughout a watershed. Using this form, field personnel can measure, describe, and interpret landforms and erosional problems in a consistent and uniform manner. In addition, data are most useful if they are collected in a computerized database format that will allow for inventory information to be rapidly searched, analyzed, and used to prepare a work plan for implementation.

Based on field observations and interpretive remarks provided on this form, and developed through additional site **inspections**, land managers will be provided with a prioritized listing of the most critical, ongoing, and potential sediment sources within each basin.

The following text is provided to help explain the intent and meaning of many of the questions and to suggest the format of possible answers, contained on the Inventory Data Form. Not all questions are applicable for each site **identified** in the field. Only those questions which are applicable for a site should be answered, and only the type of answer allowed (e.g., "Yes" or "No", or a number) should be given. Comments can be made in the comment sections. The questions are largely **self-explanatory**; therefore, no instructions for use of the landslide form have been provided at this time.

1. Site **number**— The **identification** name or number given this specific site. Each site should have a unique ID number for future reference; the number is shown on an aerial photo mylar overlay. The number is also used to identify each site in database searches.
2. Mileage- For each site that could be reached by a vehicle, a mileage figure is logged on the photo overlay map and on the computerized data sheet. Mileages are typically given from the start of the road for each site that could be reached by vehicle. If the road was not driveable, the word WALK" is used instead of a mileage. The length of walking-roads is then determined from digitizing maps or aerial photographs.
3. Photo- The flight line and frame of the air photos used for mapping. Original field mapping information is contained on an acetate overlay for each of the aerial photos covering the assessment area.
4. **Sketch?**—Have you made a sketch of the site on the back of the data form?

5. **Road name-** The name of the road upon which the site is located or closest to. Many roads have posted names, such as the #500 Road. **Other** roads will be unnamed, and you will have to develop a logical numbering system.
6. **Maintained (Y, N)— Is the** road currently being maintained? Is there evidence of maintenance activities having been performed recently?
7. **Abandoned (Y, N)—** Answer **“Yes,”** if the road is abandoned or blocked and unmaintained. The road may still be driveable, but it is **classified** as abandoned if there is no obvious maintenance **to** the culverts, the ditches are not cleaned, and vegetation is overgrowing the roadbed. Spur roads are also considered abandoned if they are completely and permanently blocked at their beginning. Gated roads are not necessarily considered abandoned, but they may be. If the road is not abandoned, then it is considered maintained.
8. **Driveable (Y, N)—** Could you drive on the road, or are there obstructions, washouts, or vegetation that make it impossible?
9. **Inspector(s)—** Use the names or initials of the inventory crew.
10. **Date (mapped)-** The date the field mapping for this site was carried out.
11. **Watershed-** The name of the watershed (**from** the map or **from** the landowner).
12. Year **built-** This is the **first** year the road showed up on aerial photographs. This is not likely the year it was constructed. The construction history for roads in the assessment area is obtained from maps and aerial photographs.
13. **Treat (Y,N)—** The answer to this question represents the final recommendation as to whether or not this site should be treated. It is answered **“Y”** if the site should be treated, **“Y?”** if the site should be treated or if equipment doing other work is at or near the site and **“N”** if this site is not recommended for treatment.
14. **Sediment yield (Y, N)—** Will this site yield sediment to a stream channel **if it is left** untreated? If this question is answered **“N,”** then you probably don't need to **fill** out a data sheet (it's not a site).
15. **Upgrade?—** Are the recommended measures aimed at upgrading and stormproofing this road?
16. **Decommission?-** Has this road been decommissioned or is it being recommended for decommissioning?
17. **Problem type (circle)—** Circle the appropriate **type(s)** of problems at each locality. (Note- gullies are new channels that have a cross sectional area over 1 square foot (**1** inch by 1 inch). Gullies are caused by concentrated surface runoff (**often** below culvert outfalls, on skid trails or on large bare areas such as landslide scars), or by stream diversions. Anything smaller is considered a rill and is lumped with surface erosion processes. Streambank erosion is often natural and unavoidable, but can be accelerated by the buildup of bed deposits in the channel, **deflected** stream **flow** caused by landslides or debris in the channel, or by increases in discharge.)

18. **Road fill failure (Y, N)**— This involves the outside edge of the road prism where loose material was pushed over the side during road construction. These failures can show up many years after construction.
19. **Landing fill failure (Y, N)**— This involves the outside edge of the log landing, where loose material was pushed over the side during landing construction. These failures can show up many years after construction.
20. **Deep-seated slide (Y, N)**— This feature usually covers fairly large areas with multiple scarp systems running through natural slopes and/or across roads and skid trails. It is characterized by emerging groundwater, leaning trees, active and inactive scarp systems, and episodic, seasonal movement **from** several feet to several hundred feet annually. Some may not move annually. Most deepseated landslides are **difficult** and expensive to control. They usually involve much more than just the road **fill**.
21. **Cutbank slide (Y,N)**— This is a landslide that is confined to the cutbank on the inside of the road. Usually, these landslides just dump material on the roadbed, and none of it gets into the stream channels. Some of the bigger slides can go right over the road and down-slope into a channel. **Cutbank** slides are usually just maintenance problems (not sediment yield problems).
22. **Already failed (Y,N)**— Landslides which have already failed are generally inactive features that have partially or largely revegetated and show no significant signs of pending erosion or sediment delivery. Gullies will **often** have armor lag deposits in the channel bed. Landslides may be inactive, even though vegetation is still sparse, and the site still looks unstable.
23. **Potential failure (Y,N)**— Features which are assigned this category are thought to be potentially ready and waiting to fail. They may be currently inactive (showing no signs of movement in the last several years), but the **scarps** and other indicators suggest that during an especially large storm the instability could become active and fail or move downslope. There is still material ready to go.
24. **Distance to stream (feet)**— How far is this landslide site **from** the nearest stream (where sediment would be delivered) in feet?
25. Slope (**percent**)— What is the slope of the hillside below the site, in percent? This is the slope of the natural ground below the base of the **fill** slope, not the slope of the road **fill** looking from the outside edge of the road. You will have to go down to the foot of the hillslope to take a good measurement with your clinometer.
26. Stream crossing **type**— Stream crossings are locations where ephemeral, intermittent, or perennial streams cross a road. The crossing may be a culverted crossing, a bridge, a Humboldt log crossing, or a **fill** crossing that never had any drainage structure installed. Mark “Y,” or circle the applicable answer.
27. **Diameter (CMP)(in inches)**— This is the culvert diameter, in inches. Typical choices include 12, 18, 24, 30, 36, 42, 48, 52, 60, or 72. Measure each culvert with a measuring tape.

28. **Pipe condition (O,C,R,P)**— This question requires three answers: the inlet, the outlet, and the bottom of the culvert pipe. 0 = OK; C = Crushed; R = Rusted (severe, to the point of having holes in the bottom); P = Plugged (anything over about 20 percent blocked should be marked “plugged”?)
29. **Headwall height (inches)**— **Headwall** height measurements are only made on stream crossings with culverts. Measure the vertical height from the bottom of the culvert inlet to the lowest point in the stream crossing **fill** where the water would begin to flow out of the crossing and down the ditch, or over the fill onto the road. Some **headwall** height measurements will be made to the low point on the inboard edge of the road and others will be made to the ditch. You have to determine the location of the low point and indicate where water would flow if the culvert were to **plug**.
30. **CMP slope (percent)**- What is the average slope of the culvert? This measurement can be taken by looking up the culvert from the outlet, or down the culvert **from** the inlet. Use a clinometer. If the culvert is straight, you can place your clipboard in the culvert inlet, put your clinometer on your clipboard, and read out the slope gradient.
31. Stream class (**I, II, III**)— These are the stream classes used by CDFG and the CDF. Class I waters are **fish** bearing at some time of the year. Class II waters **upport** aquatic life (e.g., insects and amphibians) or at least a portion of the year. Class III waters move sediment, but do not provide any habitat for aquatic life, but do show evidence of moving sediment to Class I and II waters.
32. **Ditch/road length (feet)**— The length of road and ditch which contributes surface runoff (and fine road sediment) to the stream crossing.
33. **Percent washed out (percent)**- If the crossing is eroding, how much of it has gone? Is it 10 percent washed out, or is it 50 percent washed out? If it is completely washed out, you put ‘100.’ Culverted **stream** crossings can wash out by having stream flow over the fill, by having extreme culvert outlet erosion, or by having a Humboldt log crossing develop sink-holes and subsurface gully erosion.
34. **Diversion potential (Y, N)**— Does the crossing have a high diversion potential (**DP**)? (**Y** or **N**) That is, if the culvert plugged, would flood waters spill over the road and back into the stream channel (no **DP**) or would the water flow down the road or ditch (high **DP**). **All** stream crossings (where roads cross over stream channels) have either no DP or a high DP. There are no other choices. If the crossing has no DP, overflow might cause the fill to be washed out, but the streamflow would not be diverted out of its channel. If the crossing has a high DP, the fill crossing at the point of diversion would not wash out, but a gully would form down the road, in the ditch, and/or where the water **left** the road and crossed the slope.
35. Diverted (**Y,N**)— Is the stream currently diverted down the road?
36. **Plug potential (H, M, Lb)** **This** is the estimated potential for this culvert (or Humboldt log crossing) to plug with sediment or woody debris (high, moderate, or low). It has high potential to plug and fail if the capacity is too small, or if the culvert could be easily plugged. This is also an estimate of how likely the culvert is

to plug in the next big storm. The amount of mobile organic debris and sediment being transported in the channel and whether an adequate trash rack is in place (some crossings work **fine** without a trash rack because little debris moves in the channel during storms) are considered.

37. **Channel gradient (percent)**— The slope of the natural channel upstream from the stream crossing, in percent. Do not measure the channel gradient in the flat reach influenced by the stream crossing and culvert inlet.
38. **Channel dimensions (W, D)**— The dimensions of the expected flood flow (peak) natural channel width and depth, measured in feet, upstream from the crossing in a section of stream **unaffected** by the stream crossing.
39. **Sediment transport (H, M, L)**— **This is the** relative **capability** of the stream to transport sediment (and thereby move sediment and debris down to the culvert inlet) (answered- high, moderate or low). This is a subjective and relative observation that has to be calibrated in the field.
40. **Erosion potential (H, M, L)**— The estimated potential for additional erosion is a judgement call, based on observations already taken, as to the potential for additional, significant erosion at this site. This is a probability estimate, not an estimate of how much erosion is likely to occur. The answer is either high, moderate, or low.
41. **Past erosion (yards)**— The volume of past erosion (cubic yards) at the site is recorded. The volume is typically derived from field measurements. Width, depth, and length measurements can be recorded here also. If the feature is complex, several **different** measurements may be given to account for the entire feature.
42. **Delivery (percent)**- **This is an** estimate of the percent of the past eroded material that was actually delivered to the stream channel system.
43. **Future erosion (yards)**— This is the estimated volume of future erosion. It is determined by taking area measurements in the field and calculating the **size** and volume of potential erosion that would be generated. This question calls for an estimate, but the **estimate** is based on field observations and measurements. For existing gullies, potential and **existing** landslides, and potential stream crossing washouts, it is possible to estimate the volume of future erosion that is likely to occur.
  - Volumes are easiest to estimate for potential stream crossing washouts, because the **fills** placed in the channels when roads are built are fairly regular in shape, and you can assume most of the fill would eventually be lost if the culvert plugged, and the crossing washed out by **fluvial** erosion.
  - Next, over steepened landings generate limited volumes of sediment when they fail by debris sliding, and these quantities can be estimated fairly easily.
  - Existing, enlarging gullies lengthen, widen, and deepen until they become stable, and the **final** dimensions (hence volumes of future erosion) may be estimated. Indeed, many existing gullies that were formed during major **storm** events and still look raw may already be largely stable. Most sediment

to be eroded from these features may well be limited to gradual bank retreat and collapse.

- Debris slides (**landslides**) generated **from** steep headwater swale areas (usually where they are crossed by roads) are limited in size at the point of origination. However, debris slides generated at these sites often grow much larger as they move down the steep channels and scour debris from the channel bed. This may make their final volumes much larger than that estimated at the initiation site itself. Use your best judgement, and base your volume predictions for such features on occurrences that have been documented or observed in your area. If your estimate includes additions of material scoured **from** channels and downslope areas, via these debris torrent mechanisms, make sure you differentiate the two sources on the check sheet.
- The future volumetric yield of large translational landslides can be **difficult** to estimate, largely because they move episodically, they move at unpredictable rates, and they occasionally become self-stabilized after moving for a period of time. Such slides typically are bounded by **scarps** or other natural features that place an upper bound on the amount of material that is likely (or possible) to move downslope and into a stream channel. However, this is an upper limit and not a reasonable estimate of the expected future volume. Instead, an estimate is made of what portion of the mass is likely to move downslope before the feature eventually stabilizes. Potential volumetric contributions from debris slides and other fast mass movements can be predicted much more easily than yields **from** episodically active translational landslides.

**44. Future delivery (percent)-** Will future eroded sediment enter a stream channel?

If any of the future eroded sediment will enter a stream channel and could eventually be washed to downstream areas, then there will be delivery. If all the eroded sediment will be stored on the slope and never move into the stream system, then there will be no delivery. This is an estimate of how much sediment (expressed as a percentage of the volume of expected erosion) that is likely to be delivered to the stream channel.

**45. (WxLxD)—** Measurements of the potential erosion feature, expressed as average width x length x depth. If the feature is complex, several **different** measurements may be given to account for the entire feature. These measurements describe the area assumption used by field personnel to determine future erosion volumes.

**46. Comment on problem(s)- The summary** comments for each site generally describe the nature of the erosion problem and important site characteristics. The summary comments section will help the reader quickly gain a feel for the site without having to read all the detailed questions that follow.

**47. Treatment immediacy (H, M, L)—** The subjective answer to this question lets you decide if the work must be one right now! or later. Is the feature falling apart and going to change dramatically this coming winter? Does erosion at this site seriously threaten important downslope or downstream resources (e.g., spawning or rearing areas)? Answer high, moderate, or low (low means it is not urgent, but erosional problems or potential erosion source should be corrected in the future). The answer to this question helps field personnel to summarize how critical it is to

perform erosion control work at this site. This answer is based on the severity of the potential erosion, its volume, its predicted activity level, and the sensitivity of the resources at risk.

43. **Complexity (H, M, L)**— A subjective estimate of the **difficulty** of performing the recommended treatment. For example, a simple stream crossing excavation or the excavation of a small unstable **fill** along the outboard edge of the road would usually be categorized as low complexity. On the other hand, a 1,000-cubic-yard excavation of a Humboldt log crossing which will require construction of a lower access road and dump truck endhauling may be **classified** as a high complexity site. It is best to explain your reasons in the comment section at the bottom of the data sheet.
49. **Mulch area (square feet)**— **This** is the expected area that will be bared by heavy equipment operations. This area may need mulching and seeding to control erosion after operations are complete. Many sites located away from stream channels will not need these treatments. Only if bare soil could erode and be delivered to a stream channel is there a need to mulch and seed.
50. **Possible treatments- "Y"** is placed next to recommended treatments. "Excavate soil" is reserved for excavations where the soil will be permanently removed **from** the site (thus, replacing or **installing** a culvert is not marked "excavate soil" because all the dirt is placed back in the hole- if some dirt is permanently removed from the work site, then mark "excavate soil").
51. **Total volume excavated (yards)**— **This is the total** volume of material which must be excavated from the unstable **fillslopes** or stream crossings at this site. This volume is used to help predict costs and equipment times needed to perform the excavation work. In addition, it is used to help determine whether endhauling will be necessary to dispose of spoil **from** the site. **This** is actually the estimated volume of material that will have to be excavated from the stream crossing site to prevent **future** erosion and sediment delivery. In many cases, because the streambanks must be sloped back to a stable gradient, slightly more sediment will have to be excavated **from** the crossing than would eventually fail or be washed away by **fluvial** erosion. The computational field procedure for estimating excavation volumes is not described here.
52. **Volume put back in (cubic yards)**— **This is the** volume of material that is to be put back in the "hole," as in a new culvert installation or a culvert replacement.
53. **Volume removed (cubic yards)**— This is the volume of excavated material that will not be put back into the excavation hole. A good example would be the excavation of unstable **sidecast** material- none would be put back in and all of it would be removed. Express these numbers in cubic yards.
54. **Volume stockpiled (cubic yards)**— Estimate the amount of excavated spoil that can be stored **onsite**.
55. **Volume endhauled (cubic yards)**— From measurements in the field, the available storage volume is calculated and compared to the total excavated volume to determine the need for endhauling equipment. If local storage is **insufficient**,

additional storage sites will have to be found in nearby areas along the road. Endhauling requires dump trucks.

**56. Excavation production rate (cubic yards/hr)**— State the production rate (excavation rate) you have used for this site to calculate the needed equipment hours. Use the comment section at the bottom of the page to itemize how many hours of each piece of equipment are assigned for each task and sub-task.

**57. Equipment hours**— If a piece of equipment is to perform several **different** tasks or subtasks, then list the individual times that combine to add up to total equipment time for each piece of equipment.

- **Excavator (hrs)**— Estimated hours of excavator time needed for direct excavation at the work site. This estimate does not include travel time or other miscellaneous tasks.
- **Dozer (crawler tractor) (hrs)**— Estimated hours of tractor time needed for direct excavation at the work site. This estimate does not include travel time or other miscellaneous tasks.
- **Dump trucks (hrs)**— Estimated hours of dump truck time needed for endhauling excess spoil to stable storage locations.
- **Grader (hrs)**— Estimated hours of road grader time needed for direct excavation and road work at the work site. This estimate does not include travel time or other miscellaneous tasks.
- **Loader (hrs)**— Estimated hours of loader time needed for direct excavation at the work site. This estimate does not include travel time or other miscellaneous tasks.
- **Backhoe (hrs)**— Estimated hours of backhoe time needed for direct excavation at the work site. This estimate does not include time for travelling or other miscellaneous tasks.
- **Labor (hrs)**— estimated hours of laborers needed to perform such tasks as culvert installation, culvert cleaning, etc.
- **Other**- This category is reserved for any other tasks or equipment not listed above.

**58. Comment on treatment.**- Included in this comment section are estimated equipment hours needed for backhoes, dump trucks, etc. In addition, details for equipment or labor treatments and logistics may be outlined in this comment. You should try to **fill** this comment with useful information.

## Attachment 4: Changed and Unforeseen Circumstances

### I. THE “NO SURPRISES RULE”

The “No Surprises” rule (Rule) generally provides that, as long as the HCP is being properly implemented, the federal government will not require additional land or money from the permittee in the event of unforeseen circumstances, and that any additional measures to mitigate reasonably foreseeable changed circumstances will be limited to those changed circumstances specifically identified in the HCP (and only to the extent of the mitigation specified in the Plan).

The Rule has the following two major components:

1. **Changed Circumstances**— If additional conservation and mitigation measures are deemed necessary to respond to changes in **circumstances** that were provided for in the HCP, the landowner will be expected to implement the measures specified in the HCP, but only those measures and no others.
2. **Unforeseen Circumstances**— **The wildlife** agencies will not require the commitment of additional land, water, or **financial** compensation, or additional restrictions on the use of land, water, or other natural resources, even upon a finding of unforeseen circumstances, unless the landowner consents. Upon a finding of unforeseen **circumstances**, the wildlife agencies are limited to modifications within conserved habitat areas and the **HCP's** operating conservation program. Additional conservation and mitigation measures will not involve the commitment of additional land, water, or **financial** compensation, or additional restrictions on the use of land, water, or other natural resources.

“Changed circumstances” are those changes in circumstances affecting a species or geographic area covered by an HCP, that can reasonably be anticipated by the landowner and the wildlife agencies at the time of preparation of the Plan, and that can be planned for.

“**Unforeseen circumstances**” are those changes in circumstances which are not “changed **circumstances**,” i.e., those changes in circumstances affecting a species or geographic area covered by an HCP that could not reasonably have been anticipated by the landowner and the wildlife agencies at the time of the HCP development and that result in a substantial and adverse change in the status of a species covered by the HCP. The wildlife agencies bear the burden of demonstrating that unforeseen circumstances exist, using the best available scientific and commercial data available, and considering certain **specific** factors.

Consistent with the Rule and long-established agency practice, the HCP Implementation Agreement (**IA**) includes provisions restricting the authority of the agencies to require additional mitigation measures **from PALCO** to provide for the conservation of the covered species.

## II. DYNAMICS OF COASTAL PACIFIC FORESTS- FIRE, WIND, FLOOD, LANDSLIDE, AND EARTHQUAKE CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES AND UNFORESEEN CIRCUMSTANCES

### *INTRODUCTION*

The forest ecosystems on **PALCO's** lands present the context within **which** this plan is prepared. These ecosystems are by no means static; they are dynamic and are regularly impacted by various physical processes that shape and reshape the habitat for **affected** resident, transient, and migratory species which occupy those lands during some or all of their natural history. Indeed, the many aquatic, **avian**, and terrestrial species for whose conservation this plan is crafted evolved in close association with this ever-changing mosaic of biological elements. However, circumstances on industrial timberland may be much changed today **from** original natural conditions, and the rate at which changes now occur from land management may be accelerated over evolutionary processes.

Briefly, the physical processes which affect the **biodiversity** and landscape ecology of **PALCO** lands are usually of low intensity, and they are generally quite **confined** in geographic extent and significance of impact. Nonetheless, historically in some forest environments, physical processes have on rare occasions been of "**catastrophic**" intensity, from the standpoint of impact to individual plants and animals, and these can affect large areas of the forested landscape. The very term "catastrophe" means a sudden, unexpected disaster, for which there can be no preparation. The term, intensity, periodicity, and scale of such "**catastrophic**" events remain stochastic, impossible to predict, and they are inevitably differentially applied across the landscape.

That physical processes can **significantly** alter forest habitat has been a substantive consideration in the development of this Plan. Below, we briefly summarize why we believe such possibilities are **sufficiently** remote as to require no further or additional land management restrictions beyond those described below as the appropriate response or range of responses to a particular changed circumstance.

The human perspective of processes acting on the physical and biological environment is generally narrow and limited, given the temporal and spatial context of the occurrence and frequency of such events. But it is important to understand the dynamics of the relationship between the physical processes at work in the forest environment and their **effects** upon forest habitat. This understanding is enhanced by observing both the present relationship and the physical record **left** in location geology, tree rings, soil profiles, relic tree distributions, etc.

The marbled murrelet, the **coho** salmon, the northern spotted owl, and other forest and aquatic species embraced within this habitat conservation plan were no doubt present in North America prior to the arrival of the **first** Native Americans, and their populations were doubtless affected by changing climatic conditions, just as were the **first** Native Americans in North America (see Hoffeecker, et al. 1993 for perspective). Indeed, the coastal areas of southern Alaska and British Columbia (and much of Washington), where marbled murrelets are now most abundant, were under ice, and forests were absent, during the last glacial maxima (see interesting presentation in **Pielou** 1991). Obviously, marbled murrelets and other forest-related species subsequently successfully colonized the forests of these areas. Since then, they have persisted in the presence of forest processes, including the effects of **fire** and wind, flood, earthquake and landslides, on forest ecosystems and structure.

Presented here is a short review of literature on fires, windstorms, and other physical processes, and their effects on the coastal forests of the **Pacific** Northwest. In addition, our observations of forest structure relative to these processes on PALCO lands are presented. This review is not exhaustive of the primary technical literature, although such references are cited, but in the main relies on technical review articles. Unfortunately, the literature on this subject is derived **from** few locations in the region, and summary statements are necessarily general in nature. The vast environmental heterogeneity of the forests of the region compounds the **difficulty** encountered in any attempt to predict the likelihood or scope of these kinds of events, or the potential for the effects and impacts they may pose.

The relationship between **fire**, flood, and other physical processes in the structure and composition of forest communities has been appreciated for a considerable period of time. In general, there is a growing awareness of the role and importance of fire, and to a lesser degree windstorms and other more localized disturbance agents, in the maintenance of animal communities and habitat within the North American landscape, including the Pacific Northwest coastal forests (see e.g., Franklin and Dymess, 1973; Brown, 1985; Henderson et al., 1989; Morrison & Swanson, 1999; **Agee**, 1991).

It is generally appreciated that **fire** events, especially catastrophic events, effect immediate changes in vegetation structure and contained animal communities (Quinn, 1990 and contained references). Such changes are also known for forest areas (**Huff et al.**, 1985). There is little doubt that large, catastrophic **fires**, windstorms, and other significant environmental events have, just as did the eruption of Mt. Saint Helen's, the potential to impact members of local animal communities through changes in supporting habitats. However, it is also quite apparent that the populations of many species have survived in the presence of periodic **fires**, floods, earthquakes, and windstorms **within** their occupied ranges and habitats, as they occur in present forests. More likely than not, most species will continue to survive with populations of **sufficient** size, distribution, and connectivity to successfully avoid concerns for genetic isolation and stochastic demographic events.

### **The Role and Effects of Fire**

Fire can be a significant agent **in** determining forest structure in the Pacific Northwest, but its effects, intensity, and frequency vary considerably (**Agee** and Edmonds, 1992). Although it is possible to generalize that fire is an important element in forest ecology, it is not possible to specify the impacts of fire on any given area. This is so because invariably, **fires** are not uniformly distributed through time (**Morrison and Swanson, 1990**), the areas affected **often differ** markedly (Henderson et al., 1989), and the intensity and scale vary considerably (Henderson et al., 1989; Morrison and Swanson, 1990). Regional examples of the role of fire over the past several hundred to thousand years demonstrate this variability.

The Olympic Peninsula of Washington, the site of the Olympic National Park and the Olympic National Forest, is well known for the large variation in rainfall and plant communities. The Olympic Peninsula also provides important habitat for a variety of at-risk **fish** and wildlife species. Much of the forest of the Olympic Peninsula is theoretically within the known daily **flight** range of nesting marbled **murrelets**, for example. Generally, the western lowlands of the Olympic Peninsula, an area of **significant** rainfall, are within the Sitka Spruce Zone, while the eastern and northeastern lowlands, areas of lower rainfall, are within the Western Hemlock Zone (Franklin and Dymess, 1973; Henderson et al., 1989).

Fire is relatively unimportant as a process in the Sitka Spruce forest, where a **fire** return rate (i.e., average interval between **fires**) of 900 years is observed. There were few fires in the last 700 years, and these were generally in dryer southern aspect areas and were relatively small in area (**Huff** et al., 1985). In contrast, in the Western Hemlock forest, **fire** is a significant process in the ecosystem; most areas in this forest type have burned several times in the last 700 years. Yet, even in this area, the fire return rate, for large intense fires, is 234 years. The last catastrophic **fire** in this area of landscape proportions only burned about 2,700 acres (Henderson et al., 1989).

The relatively **infrequent** occurrence of significant fire events in the wet lowland Sitka Spruce Zone on the Olympic Peninsula (Henderson et al., 1989) is likely representative of the role of fire in this zone from southern Alaska to northern California, where it blends into the coast redwood forest, a special type of the Sitka Spruce Zone (Franklin and Dymess, 1973). This is a community of long-living tree species where reproduction may be limited to openings in the forest **from** windthrow or other mortality of trees. **As** the cited authors note, **in** the Olympic Rain Forest reproduction is from downed logs and seedlings, and there are few places where fire has allowed Douglas-fir to establish.

Along the **Pacific** Coast in Washington and Oregon, the Western Hemlock Zone lies inland **from** the Sitka Spruce Zone and is usually drier than the latter zone. As shown, fires are more common and more intense within the Western Hemlock Zone. However, within this zone, there is a gradient in the intensity, scale, and frequency of fires (**Agee** and Edmonds, 1992), and perhaps all of this zone has burned over the past several hundred years. Douglas-fir is often dominant or the sole dominant in rural stands and Douglas-fir dominates large forest areas (Franklin and Dymess 1973). Along much of the Oregon coast, fire intervals vary from 90 to 150 years, to 500 years inland at the crest of the coast range. Yet, there are many examples of **400- to 600-year-old**, old-growth stands.

Fire plays a role in **determining** the structure of coast redwood forests. Indeed, Franklin and Dymess (1973) state "**Almost** all the large [coast redwood trees] bear massive scars suggesting it may be a seral species dependent upon **fire** for reproduction." Others (**Agee** and Edmonds, 1992) have noted that south of Eureka, **fires** of moderate intensity were fairly frequent in occurrence. They report fire intervals of 50 to 500 years in the coast redwood region. Other authors have reported low intensity fires in the redwood zone may have return intervals **as** low as 12 to 20 years. However, stand replacing **fires** are apparently very rare events.

**Site-specific** susceptibilities to **fire** are evident in the redwood forests of northern California. For example, compared to alluvial floodplain areas, fire is likely to be more common in areas of topographic relief within the coast redwood forests (e.g., ridgetops). On **PALCO** lands, although there are specific site or stand peculiarities, **fire** scars are commonly evidenced on large coast redwoods and Douglas-firs, indicating both the widespread occurrence of fire and the particular resistance of these mature trees to consumption by fire. In some old-growth stands on **PALCO's** lands, however, distinct age classes are evident. These observations suggest the presence of a relatively stable old-growth coast redwood forest subject to fires of moderate intensity, but occurring on a scale of centuries. Again, the implication is that fire, although present, is not leading to stand destruction and replacement, except on a scale of centuries.

In light of this analysis, it is not reasonably foreseeable that stand-replacing fires will occur on **PALCO's** lands during the life of this conservation plan. Thus it is unnecessary to provide for

new, different, or additional mitigation or conservation, including management restrictions or reserve configurations based on any speculation that such effects could occur.

#### *FIRE CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES*

Wildfires (including, but not limited to, those originating from timber operations and prescribed burning) that cover 20 percent or more of a planning watershed but are 5,000 total acres or less constitute changed circumstances.

In order to mitigate the impact of such changed circumstance **fires** on aquatic species, PALCO, in cooperation and consultation with the wildlife agencies, will conduct an expedited watershed analysis on the hydrologic unit impacted by any changed circumstance **fire**.

The analysis will start as soon as the requisite personnel from PALCO and the wildlife agencies required for the analysis can be made available. If watershed analysis has been performed previously for such an HU, then the **affected** area will be revisited. If the area has not been analyzed prior to the changed circumstance, then it will be made a priority for analysis.

If multiple fire changed circumstances occur close enough to each other in time such that the response will be significantly delayed due to lack of available personnel, PALCO will confer with the wildlife agencies to prioritize the analyses which have to be conducted as a result of the changed circumstance.

The outcome of watershed analysis will be the development of appropriate measures to minimize, to the extent practicable, the occurrence of sediment inputs that could accumulate with the fire event and exacerbate negative impacts to the waters and aquatic covered species. As required by the watershed analysis process, the wildlife agencies shall establish the **site-specific** prescriptions for implementation upon the completion of the watershed analysis. Ongoing covered activities may continue to **utilize** the existing Aquatics Conservation Plan measures until the new prescriptions are developed. However, as the wildlife agencies deem necessary, in consultation with PALCO, measures will be promptly implemented to minimize adverse effects prior to completion of the watershed analysis.

#### *FIRE UNFORESEEN CIRCUMSTANCES*

Fire unforeseen circumstances constitute any fire as described above that covers more than 5,000 total acres.

#### ***The Role and Effects of Wind***

Windstorms can be a major process in the coastal forests of the Pacific Northwest (Agee and Edmonds, 1992; Henderson et al., 1989). Once away from the coast, windstorms are not as regionally important, although limited areas of blow-downs and damage along stand edges do occur.

In the Sitka Spruce Zone, windthrow may be the primary disturbance factor acting on the forest, as opposed to **fire** in drier, more inland areas (Agee and Edmonds, 1992). This degree of importance is identified for this zone from Oregon north through southeast Alaska, where **large-scale** windthrow events are likely to occur several times each century. Generally, the same area is not affected by each storm. Local topography affects the pattern and severity of windthrow. On PALCO lands, wind-fallen trees are a common, but localized, occurrence. Windthrow in riparian leave strips or **buffers** occurs and is expected in the future, but such windthrow is almost always limited to individual trees or groups of trees. Small-scale windthrow is

new, different, or additional mitigation or conservation, including management restrictions or reserve configurations based on any speculation that such effects could occur.

#### *FIRE CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES*

Wildfires (including, but not limited to, those originating **from** timber operations and prescribed burning) that cover 20 percent or more of a planning watershed but are 5,000 total acres or less constitute changed circumstances.

In order to mitigate the impact of such changed circumstance fires on aquatic species, PALCO, in cooperation and consultation with the wildlife agencies, will conduct an expedited watershed analysis on the hydrologic unit impacted by any changed circumstance fire.

The analysis will start as soon as the requisite personnel from PALCO and the wildlife agencies required for the analysis can be made available. If watershed analysis has been performed previously for such an **HU**, then the affected area will be revisited. If the area has not been analyzed prior to the changed circumstance, then it **will** be made a priority for analysis.

If multiple fire changed circumstances occur close enough to each other in time such that the response will be **significantly** delayed due to lack of available personnel, PALCO will confer with the wildlife agencies to prioritize the analyses which have to be conducted as a result of the changed circumstance.

The outcome of watershed analysis **will** be the development of appropriate measures to minimize, to the extent practicable, the occurrence of sediment inputs that could accumulate with the **fire** event and exacerbate negative impacts to the waters and aquatic covered species. As required by the watershed analysis process, the wildlife agencies shall establish the **site-specific** prescriptions for implementation upon the completion of the watershed analysis. Ongoing covered activities may continue to utilize the existing Aquatics Conservation Plan measures until the new prescriptions are developed. However, as the **wildlife** agencies deem necessary, in consultation with PALCO, measures **will** be promptly implemented to minimize adverse effects prior to completion of the watershed analysis.

#### *FIRE UNFORESEEN CIRCUMSTANCES*

Fire unforeseen circumstances constitute any **fire** as described above that covers more than **5,000** total acres.

#### **The Role and Effects of Wind**

Windstorms can be a major process in the coastal forests of the **Pacific** Northwest (**Agee** and **Edmonds**, 1992; Henderson et al., 1989). Once away **from** the coast, windstorms are not as regionally important, although limited areas of blow-downs and damage along stand edges do occur.

In the Sitka Spruce Zone, windthrow may be the primary disturbance factor acting on the forest, as opposed to fire in drier, more inland areas (**Agee** and Edmonds, 1992). This degree of importance is identified for this zone from Oregon north through southeast Alaska, where **large-scale** windthrow events are likely to occur several times each century. Generally, the same area is not **affected** by each storm. Local topography **affects** the pattern and severity of windthrow. On PALCO lands, wind-fallen trees are a common, but localized, occurrence. Windthrow in riparian leave strips or buffers occurs and is expected in the future, but such windthrow is almost always limited to individual trees or groups of trees. Small-scale windthrow is

windthrow which causes less impact than the complete **blowdown** of 200 feet, measured along the length of the stream, of trees within the riparian zone of Class I and Class II streams. This small-scale windthrow is a normal and expected part of the forest ecology and was contemplated when the mitigation measures for this Plan were designed. Small-scale windthrow is -not expected to have a significant adverse impact on stream shading or water temperatures and will have the beneficial effect of introducing large woody debris into streams that currently lack this habitat forming element. Thus, small-scale windthrow does not pose so substantial an impact as to threaten an adverse change in the status of any covered species and may actually benefit aquatic species (Lisle, 1998, in press).

#### *WINDTHROW CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES*

A windstorm which results in the complete **blowdown** of between 200 and 500 feet, measured along the length of the waters, of the trees within the **RMZ** of any Class I or Class II waters is a changed circumstance.

In order to mitigate the impact of such changed circumstance windthrow on aquatic species, PALCO, in cooperation and consultation with the wildlife agencies, **will** conduct an expedited watershed analysis on the hydrologic unit impacted by any changed circumstance windthrow.

The analysis will start as soon as the requisite personnel **from** PALCO and the **wildlife** agencies required for the analysis can be made available. If watershed analysis has been performed previously for such an HU, then the **affected** area **will** be revisited. If the area has not been analyzed prior to the changed **circumstance**, then it will be made a priority for analysis.

If multiple windthrow changed **circumstances** occur close to enough each other in time such that the response will be **significantly** delayed due to lack of available personnel, PALCO will confer with the wildlife agencies to prioritize the analyses which have to be conducted as a result of the changed circumstance.

The outcome of watershed analysis will be the development of appropriate measures to minimize, to the extent practicable, the occurrence of sediment inputs that could accumulate with the **fire** event and exacerbate negative impacts to the waters and aquatic covered species. As required by the watershed analysis process, the wildlife agencies shall establish the **site-specific** prescriptions for implementation upon the completion of the watershed analysis. Ongoing covered activities may continue to utilize the **existing** Aquatics Conservation Plan measures until the new prescriptions are developed. However, as the wildlife agencies deem necessary, in consultation with PALCO, measures will be promptly implemented to minimize adverse effects prior to completion of the watershed analysis.

#### *WINDTHROW UNFORESEEN CIRCUMSTANCES*

A windstorm which results in the complete **blowdown** of more than 500 feet, measured along the waters, of trees within the **RMZs** of any Class I or Class II waters is an unforeseen circumstance.

#### **The Role and Effects of Landslides**

Landslides are known to have local and **often** significant impacts on plant communities (e.g., Brown, 1985). Depending upon their severity and scale, landslides can open up areas within otherwise continuous and closed forests for new reproduction. In addition, landslides are an important source of gravels and cobbles in streams. Evidence of landslides is observed more often in areas of high topographic relief with unstable surface soil profiles.

Within the area of the coast redwood forest of northern California, the effects of landslides in creating gaps for new reproduction are of greater significance than in other forest areas more subject to stand/forest replacing catastrophic events. Within the coast redwood forests, landslides are of relatively frequent occurrence, on the scale of decades. Landslides may have the potential to eliminate small patches of wildlife habitat, but these events are both impossible to predict and unlikely to have a cumulatively **significant** effect upon terrestrial species, given their wide distribution over the landscape and limited individual scale. By contrast, landslides, depending on their magnitude, can have a significant negative effect on aquatic invertebrates and fish.

Accordingly, conservation and mitigation measures for aquatic species within this plan were designed both to address sediment and other habitat effects from past landslides and, through a comprehensive series of stream buffer prescriptions, land management restrictions, geologic surveys, and sediment monitoring, to avoid significant adverse impacts **from management-** induced landslide and mass wasting events in the future. Landslides which cause significant alteration of the in-stream habitat condition to less than 10 percent of the total length of all Class I and Class II streams in any planning watershed are part of the ordinary ecology of the forest and are adequately addressed by the **existing** conservation and mitigation measures.

#### **LANDSLIDE CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES**

A landslide or landslides that cause, or are substantially likely to cause, alteration of 10 to 80 percent of the in-stream condition in any Class I water, and a landslide or landslides that cause, or are substantially likely to cause, alteration of 10 to 80 percent of the **instream** condition of the total length of all Class II waters in a planning watershed constitutes a changed circumstance for the planning watershed or watersheds where the landslide(s) occurred up to the level at which the landslide(s), become an unforeseen circumstance.

In order to mitigate the impact of such changed circumstance landslide(s) on aquatic species, PALCO, in cooperation and consultation with the wildlife agencies, will conduct an expedited watershed analysis on the hydrologic unit impacted by any changed circumstance landslide(s).

The analysis will begin as soon as the requisite personnel from PALCO and the wildlife agencies required for the analysis can be made available. If watershed analysis has been performed previously for such an **HU**, then the affected area **will** be revisited. If the area has not been analyzed prior to the changed **circumstance**, then it **will** be made a priority for analysis.

If multiple **landslide(s)** changed circumstances occur close enough to each other in time such that the response will be significantly delayed due to lack of available personnel, PALCO will confer with the **wildlife** agencies to prioritize the analyses which have to be conducted as a result of the changed circumstance.

The outcome of watershed analysis will be the development of appropriate measures to minimize, to the **extent** practicable, the occurrence of sediment inputs that could accumulate with the landslide event and exacerbate negative impacts to the waters and aquatic covered species. As required by the watershed analysis process, the wildlife agencies shall establish the site-specific prescriptions for implementation upon the completion of the watershed analysis. Ongoing covered activities may continue to utilize the **existing** Aquatics Conservation Plan measures until the new prescriptions are developed. However, as the **wildlife** agencies deem

necessary, in consultation with PALCO, measures **will** be promptly implemented to minimize adverse effects prior to completion of the watershed analysis.

#### *LANDSLIDE UNFORESEEN CIRCUMSTANCES*

A landslide or landslides that cause, or are likely to cause, alteration greater than 80 percent of the **instream** condition in any one Class I water in a planning watershed, and a landslide or landslides that cause or are substantially likely to cause, alteration greater than 80 percent of the **instream** condition of the **total** length of all Class II waters in a planning watershed constitute an unforeseen circumstance.

#### ***The Role and Effects of Floods***

Although the impacts on forests from flooding are generally recognized (Brown, 1985), the effects are apparently **localized**. Because most streams on **PALCO's** lands are partially or totally contained (i.e., flow through narrow river valleys) the total area exposed to potential flooding is limited. The experience of observing large trees **floating** in **flood-stage** rivers and the changing of river courses confirm that flooding does often remove, at least **locally**, trees or stands of trees. However, flooding is a natural and necessary component of stream ecosystems. For example, floods transport and sort sediment, carry **fine** sediments and nutrient onto **floodplains**, clean spawning substrates of silts and sands, and produce scour that leads to the development of pools and other habitat. Changing river courses also **periodically** provide opportunities for the establishment of new stands of trees within the coastal areas of California, Oregon, and Washington.

Within the Coastal Redwood Zone of northern California, flooding is important for providing opportunities for the establishment of new redwood stands (Franklin and Dymess, 1973). The rich **alluvial** terraces along river courses provide ideal growing conditions for coast redwoods, evident in the high-quality, old-growth stands present in many river-bottom areas. Although many such stands persist for hundreds of years, all are subject to partial or complete elimination during major flood events. In fact, rather than a concern for elimination of habitat values, these processes are seen as habitat-enhancing for many species- i.e., the recruitment of large woody debris into riverine systems for **salmonid** habitat structure and improved watercourse morphology, etc. The aquatics component of the HCP recognizes the dynamic nature of stream courses and already accounts for effects of flood by, for example, significantly restricting harvest adjacent to Class I and II streams and thus allowing for natural processes to mitigate the effects of flooding. A central component of the aquatics strategy is a watershed assessment process which will result in watershed-by-watershed prescriptions on activities adjacent to stream courses and reflecting the **specific** geomorphology of each watershed. Thus, the watershed assessment **will** result in **specific** prescriptions in those watersheds. For example, watershed analysis will identify road segments and hill slopes at high probability of delivering sediment to streams and will identify management mitigations to address these problems.

Floods which are less in magnitude than a **50-year** recurrence interval event (i.e., less than a **50-year** flood) are part of the expected normal ecology of the forest. The mitigation and conservation measures in the Plan, as described in this paragraph, are adequate for such floods.

#### *FLOOD CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES*

A **50- to 100-year** recurrence interval flood event constitutes a changed **circumstance**. In order to mitigate the impact of such changed circumstance floods on aquatic species, PALCO, in

cooperation and consultation with the wildlife agencies, will conduct an expedited watershed analysis on the hydrologic unit impacted by any changed circumstance floods.

The analysis **will** start as soon as the requisite personnel **from** PALCO and the wildlife agencies required for the analysis can be made available. If watershed analysis has been performed previously for such an HU, then the affected area will be revisited. If the area has not been previously analyzed prior to the changed circumstance, then it will be made a priority for analysis.

If multiple flood changed circumstances occur close enough to each other in time such that the response **will** be **significantly** delayed due to lack of available personnel, PALCO will confer with the **wildlife** agencies to prioritize the analyses which have to be conducted as a result of the changed **circumstance**.

**The** outcome of watershed analysis **will** be the development of appropriate measures to minimize, to the extent practicable, the **occurrence** of sediment inputs that could accumulate with the **flood** event and exacerbate negative impacts to the waters and aquatic covered species. As required by the watershed analysis process, the wildlife agencies **shall** establish the **site-specific** prescriptions for implementation upon the completion of the watershed analysis. Ongoing covered activities may continue to utilize the existing Aquatics Conservation Plan measures until the new prescriptions are developed. However, as the **wildlife** agencies deem necessary, in consultation with PALCO, measures **will** be promptly implemented to minimize adverse effects prior to completion of the watershed analysis.

#### *FLOOD UNFORESEEN CIRCUMSTANCES*

A flood which is greater in magnitude than a **100-year**, recurrence-interval flood event is an unforeseen **circumstance**.

#### ***The Role and Effects of Earthquake***

The region in which PALCO's lands are located lies in an area known for frequent, but generally small, earthquakes. The San **Andreas** fault passes within 50 miles offshore of most of PALCO's lands, and several smaller, less-significant **faults** are found throughout the region. Because earthquakes are quite common, they are **generally** of a relatively **insignificant** magnitude, on average of approximately Richter **scale** magnitude 2. Occasionally, more **significant** events occur, but of course, they are impossible to predict. For example, in April of 1992 three earthquakes of magnitude 6 or greater on the **Richter** scale occurred in relatively short succession. These earthquakes produced ground shaking of **sufficient** magnitude to sever a gas line, resulting in a **fire** which destroyed the Scotia Shopping Center near PALCO's headquarters and offices. No stand of trees of any age is documented to have been downed as a result of the April 1992 earthquake, or any other recorded earthquake event. While, it may be speculated that localized landslides or other earth movements resulted from the earthquake, there are no data to document that this occurred on PALCO lands.

Earthquake-caused landslides, if any, would occur in areas of high topographic relief and with unstable surface soil profiles. These areas are **already** mapped and are subject to numerous mitigations, other management measures, and restrictions as provided in **this plan** to prevent or minimize their occurrence and, if they do occur, to minimize their impact. While the connection has never been made on PALCO lands, it is also possible that some trees have fallen as a result of earthquake activity. Fallen trees located in the forest are generally attributed to windthrow effects. In the aggregate, **from** whatever cause, fallen trees are not significant

enough in a number or volume to require additional mitigations and/or changes in the management scenario or restrictions outlined in this plan.

Landslides caused by earthquakes will be addressed pursuant to the "Landslide" subsection of this "**Changed** Circumstances" section. Earthquakes of high enough magnitude to substantially alter habitat status or require additional conservation or mitigation measures other than responding to landslides caused by such earthquakes are not reasonably foreseeable during the life of the HCP.

### ***The Role and Effects of El Nino and Oil Spills***

The murrelet, one of the focus species of this Plan, is a **seabird**. The **coho** salmon, chinook salmon, and other fish species covered by this Plan are anadromous. Obviously the conditions at sea, where these species spend much of their lives, are important in any evaluation of potential habitat changes. The ocean offshore of PALCO timberlands serves, as well, as habitat for many invertebrates and fish which may be prey sources for murrelets and raptors or are otherwise covered under the Plan. Humboldt Bay National Wildlife **Refuge** was established in 1989 in recognition of the area's unique fish and wildlife values.

The risk of an oil spill incident in the area is probably greatest in developed ports. For example, Humboldt Bay has been identified as a "facility transfer area" by the CDFG Division of Oil **Spill** Prevention and Response. (Statewide Coastal Protection **Review**, Report to California Legislature, 1995.) Millions of gallons of fuel are transported through Humboldt Bay annually in as many as 60 deliveries each year.

Nonetheless, despite the potential risk for large oil spills, historically, most spills have been small. The average spill volume has been calculated to be 77 gallons, or 1.8 barrels. In one study by CDFG, most spills were reported to be in the 5 to 25gallon range **from** 1984 through 1991, the last period for which figures could be obtained.

**While** such events may be reasonably foreseeable- inasmuch as over the same 7-year period as many as 150 spill incidents of some sort were documented- most such events were not of the sort which would result in substantial adverse change, or indeed in any measurable change, in the status of the species covered under this plan. However, larger, less frequent oil spills cause more **significant** effects than the small spills summarized above. For instance, in November, 1997, the M/V Kure spilled about 4,506 gallons of fuel oil in Humboldt Bay, and the **oil** spread outside the Bay into areas of the Pacific Ocean that contained murrelets. Nine marbled murrelets were documented as killed by this spill, and the actual mortality was probably several times higher, because some carcasses would likely have been lost at sea, and some of the carcasses that washed up on shore would **likely** have been removed by scavengers or not found for other reasons (Burger and Fry, 1993). An assessment of the natural resources damages resulting from the M/V Kure oil spill is in progress. In this type of incident, the responsible party is liable under the Oil Pollution Act to restore, rehabilitate, replace, or acquire the equivalent of the injured natural resources. In similar cases, the compensation has involved acquisition and preservation of marbled murrelet breeding habitat (Welsh, D, February 17, 1999, Personal Communication, Wildlife Toxicologist, USFWS, Sacramento, CA).

Marine oil spills are outside the control of PALCO, and the habitat **affected** by oil spills is not under **PALCO's** management. Conservation measures and mitigation contained in the HCP will protect most of the highquality breeding habitat on the PALCO property. Therefore, no additional changes in HCP measures are necessary to mitigate for the effects of oil spills such as

those described above. An oil spill of such magnitude as to cause such **significant** adverse impacts to the murrelet or any other covered species that additional conservation or mitigation measures are required on the HCP area is an unforeseen circumstance.

El Nino, the **warm** water current that flows across the South **Pacific** and causes temperature and **rainfall** changes throughout the **Pacific** Northwest is a changed circumstance. However, the Plan was developed during an El **Nino** event. Thus this Plan contains all mitigation necessary to respond to another El Nino event of the same magnitude as occurred in 1997 to 1998. An El Nino event of greater magnitude than occurred in 1997 to 1998 is an unforeseen circumstance.

#### *LEGAL. CHANGED CIRCUMSTANCES AND UNFORESEEN CIRCUMSTANCES*

##### **New Listing of Species Not Covered Under Federal or State Permits**

The preamble to the no surprises rule states that the listing of a species as endangered or threatened may constitute a changed **circumstance**.

The wildlife agencies shall immediately notify PALCO upon becoming aware that a species which is associated with habitat found on the covered **ands** and which is not a covered species (an uncovered species) may be or has been proposed for listing.

Upon receipt of notice of the potential listing of an uncovered species, PALCO may, but is not required to, enter into negotiations with the wildlife agencies regarding necessary modifications, if any, to the Plan required to amend the applicable federal and/or state permit to cover the covered species. If PALCO elects to pursue amendment of the applicable permit, the **wildlife** agencies will provide technical assistance to PALCO to identify any modifications to the Plan that may be necessary to amend the applicable federal or state permit.

In determining whether any further conservation or mitigation measures are required in order **to** amend the **affected** permit to authorize incidental take of such uncovered species, the wildlife agencies shall consider the conservation and mitigation measures already provided in the Plan and cooperate with PALCO to minimize the adverse effects of the listing of such uncovered species on the covered activities consistent with Section 10 of the FESA or CESA, as required by Section 6.1.5(b) of the IA.

Once a "may be warranted" **finding** is made by the applicable wildlife agency or the CDFG, the applicable wildlife agency shall use its best efforts to identify any necessary measures to avoid the likelihood of jeopardy to or take of (the "no **take/no** jeopardy measures? the uncovered species. The measures shall be developed in consultation with PALCO.

If PALCO and the applicable wildlife agency cannot come to agreement on the "no take/no jeopardy" measures, PALCO may invoke the alternative dispute resolution process set forth in Section 9.2 of the IA.

If the applicable federal and/or state permit has not been amended to include the uncovered species at the time the species is listed, then PALCO **shall** implement the "no take/no jeopardy" measures **identified** by the wildlife agencies until the applicable permit is amended to include the uncovered species or the wildlife agencies **notify** PALCO that such measures are no longer needed to avoid the likelihood of jeopardy to, take of, or adverse **modification** of the designated critical habitat, if any, of the uncovered species.

***Changed Circumstances To Address Suspension, Revocation or Relinquishment of Either the NMFS or USFWS Federal Permit***

If either the USFWS or the **NMFS** federal permit is suspended, revoked, or relinquished in accordance with the procedures in the IA, the **wildlife** agencies will reevaluate the remaining federal permit to ensure that continuation of one or more of the covered activities is not likely to jeopardize, take, or adversely **modify** the critical habitat, if any, of the covered species **listed** under the **FESA** and included on the suspended, revoked, or relinquished permit (the "affected covered species?". The applicable wildlife agencies will identify any **m&cations** to the covered activities in consultation with PALCO needed to avoid take and/or jeopardy to the **affected** covered species. If PALCO disagrees with the **modifications** to covered activities identified by the wildlife agencies, PALCO may invoke the dispute resolution process provided under Section 9.2 of the LA without waiving its right to seek judicial review of any applicable agency decision. **PALCO shall** implement any identified **modifications** to the covered activities until USFWS or NMFS notifies PALCO in **writing** that **modifications** to the Plan covered activities are no longer **required** to avoid the likelihood of jeopardy to, take of, or adverse **modification** of the designated critical habitat, if any, of the **affected** covered species, the suspended federal permit is reinstated, or PALCO applies for and is issued a new FESA Section **10(a)(1)(B)** permit covering the **affected** covered species. Any **modification required** by the **wildlife** agencies shall, to the **maximum** extent feasible, **minimize** impacts to covered activities consistent with this Plan and the IA.

**REFERENCES**

- Agee, J.D.** 1991. Fire history of Douglas-fir forests in the **Pacific** Northwest. Pages 25-33 in Wildlife and vegetation of unmanaged Douglas-fir forests. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, General Technical Report PNW-GTR-285.
- Agee, J.K., and R.L. Edmonds.** 1992. Appendix **F**, forest protection guidelines for the Northern Spotted Owl. Pages **419-480** in Recovery Plan for the Northern Spotted Owl - Draft. United States Department of Interior. **662** pages.
- Brown, E.R.** (editor). 1985. Management of wildlife and fish habitats in forests of western Oregon and **Washington**. Part 1 - Chapter Narratives. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Region **R6-F&WL-192-1985**.
- Franklin, J.F., and C.T. Dymess.** 1973. Natural vegetation of Oregon and Washington. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, General Technical Report PNW-8.
- Henderson, JA, D.H. Peter, R.D. Leshner, and D.C. Shaw. 1989. Forested plant associations of the Olympic National Forest. United States Department of Agriculture, **Forest** Service, Pacific Northwest Region, **R6** Ecology Technical Paper **001-88**.
- Hoffecker, J.F., W.R. Powers, and T. **Goebel.** 1993. The colonization of **Beringia** and the peopling of the New World. *Science* **259:46-53**
- Huff, M.H., **J.K. Agee,** and DA Manuwal. 1985. **Postfire** succession of avifauna in the Olympic Mountains, Washington. Pages **8-15** in **Lotand, J.E., and J.K. Brown** (compilers). Fire's effects on wildlife habitat - Symposium Proceedings; **Missoula, Montana, March 21, 1984**. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, General Technical Report INT-188.
- Lisle, T. In press. Symposium on Casper Creek Watershed Analysis. Presentations Given in Ukiah, CA. May **5, 1998**

- Morrison, **P.H.**, and F.J. Swanson. 1990. Fire history and pattern in a Cascade Range landscape. USDA, Forest Service, General Technical Report PNW-GTR-254.
- Pielou**, E.C. 1991. After the ice age: The return of life to glaciated North America. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- Quinn, R.D. 1990. Habitat preferences and distribution of mammals in California Chaparral. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Research Paper PSW-202.